



## Informazioni su questo libro

Si tratta della copia digitale di un libro che per generazioni è stato conservata negli scaffali di una biblioteca prima di essere digitalizzato da Google nell'ambito del progetto volto a rendere disponibili online i libri di tutto il mondo.

Ha sopravvissuto abbastanza per non essere più protetto dai diritti di copyright e diventare di pubblico dominio. Un libro di pubblico dominio è un libro che non è mai stato protetto dal copyright o i cui termini legali di copyright sono scaduti. La classificazione di un libro come di pubblico dominio può variare da paese a paese. I libri di pubblico dominio sono l'anello di congiunzione con il passato, rappresentano un patrimonio storico, culturale e di conoscenza spesso difficile da scoprire.

Commenti, note e altre annotazioni a margine presenti nel volume originale compariranno in questo file, come testimonianza del lungo viaggio percorso dal libro, dall'editore originale alla biblioteca, per giungere fino a te.

## Linee guida per l'utilizzo

Google è orgoglioso di essere il partner delle biblioteche per digitalizzare i materiali di pubblico dominio e renderli universalmente disponibili. I libri di pubblico dominio appartengono al pubblico e noi ne siamo solamente i custodi. Tuttavia questo lavoro è oneroso, pertanto, per poter continuare ad offrire questo servizio abbiamo preso alcune iniziative per impedire l'utilizzo illecito da parte di soggetti commerciali, compresa l'imposizione di restrizioni sull'invio di query automatizzate.

Inoltre ti chiediamo di:

- + *Non fare un uso commerciale di questi file* Abbiamo concepito Google Ricerca Libri per l'uso da parte dei singoli utenti privati e ti chiediamo di utilizzare questi file per uso personale e non a fini commerciali.
- + *Non inviare query automatizzate* Non inviare a Google query automatizzate di alcun tipo. Se stai effettuando delle ricerche nel campo della traduzione automatica, del riconoscimento ottico dei caratteri (OCR) o in altri campi dove necessiti di utilizzare grandi quantità di testo, ti invitiamo a contattarci. Incoraggiamo l'uso dei materiali di pubblico dominio per questi scopi e potremmo esserti di aiuto.
- + *Conserva la filigrana* La "filigrana" (watermark) di Google che compare in ciascun file è essenziale per informare gli utenti su questo progetto e aiutarli a trovare materiali aggiuntivi tramite Google Ricerca Libri. Non rimuoverla.
- + *Fanne un uso legale* Indipendentemente dall'utilizzo che ne farai, ricordati che è tua responsabilità accertarti di farne un uso legale. Non dare per scontato che, poiché un libro è di pubblico dominio per gli utenti degli Stati Uniti, sia di pubblico dominio anche per gli utenti di altri paesi. I criteri che stabiliscono se un libro è protetto da copyright variano da Paese a Paese e non possiamo offrire indicazioni se un determinato uso del libro è consentito. Non dare per scontato che poiché un libro compare in Google Ricerca Libri ciò significhi che può essere utilizzato in qualsiasi modo e in qualsiasi Paese del mondo. Le sanzioni per le violazioni del copyright possono essere molto severe.

## Informazioni su Google Ricerca Libri

La missione di Google è organizzare le informazioni a livello mondiale e renderle universalmente accessibili e fruibili. Google Ricerca Libri aiuta i lettori a scoprire i libri di tutto il mondo e consente ad autori ed editori di raggiungere un pubblico più ampio. Puoi effettuare una ricerca sul Web nell'intero testo di questo libro da <http://books.google.com>

---

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>



NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 07024241 1











Alfred H. Hays

Feb: 1852

R L P



Alfred M. Hays

Feb: 1852

R L P

1. *German language - Grammar*

A  
GRAMMAR  
OF  
THE GERMAN LANGUAGE,  
SYSTEMATICALLY ARRANGED  
ON  
A NEW PLAN,  
BRIEF, COMPREHENSIVE AND PRACTICAL.

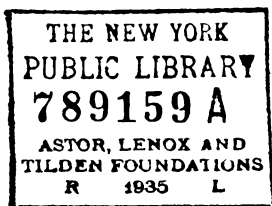
BY  
CASPAR J. BELEKÉ,

Professor of the German Language and Literature in Mount St. Mary's College,  
Emmetsburg, Md.

h.c.  
PHILADELPHIA:

PUBLISHED AND SOLD BY GEORGE W. MENTZ & SON,  
No. 53 North Third Street.

1840.



---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1840, by CASPAR J. BELEKE,  
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Eastern District of Pennsylv-  
vania.

---



**JULIUS BOETTICHER, PRINTER,**  
No. 158 Race Street.

TO

**PETER S. DU PONCEAU, ESQ. LL.D.**

President of the American Philosophical Society in Philadelphia,

THE

ACCOMPLISHED JURIST, THE DISTINGUISHED LINGUIST,

AND

THE ZEALOUS PATRON

OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE,

**THIS WORK**

IS MOST RESPECTFULLY DEDICATED, BY

**THE AUTHOR.**



## PREFACE.

---

EVERY free country, trusting to correct and general intelligence for the permanency of its institutions, will liberally patronize, not only science and native literature, but also the study of foreign languages, with a view of deriving aid from the intellectual labours and improvements of other nations. Among those languages which are attracting the attention of the scholar, the philologist and the statesman, none possesses more charms, excites more interest, or opens more sources of information and speculation, than the German. Formerly, it was rarely ever found included in a course of collegiate or general study. But as the beauties\* and wealth of German literature have become known and appreciated, its study has become more general. Now it finds able advocates in nearly all the respectable literary institutions of the land. New England, the Greece of the new world, where the rays of light are concentrated from every direction, and again reflected abroad, has the honour of being the first in this country to encourage and cultivate the study of the language in which Schiller and Göthe, Wieland and Bürger, Körner and Voss, Klopstock, Herder and Schlegel have rendered themselves immortal.

\* "I am so delighted when I meet any one who knows and loves my favourite Seelenvollen (full of soul) German, that I could talk of it forever, I believe. That language, when I first became acquainted with it, opened to me a new world of thought and feeling, and even the music of the Eichenland, (land of oaks,) as Körner calls it, seemed to acquire a deeper tone, when I had gained a familiarity with its noble poetry."—*Mrs. Hemans' Memoirs*, page 80. By H. F. Chorley. Philadelphia: 1836.



## PREFACE.

---

EVERY free country, trusting to correct and general intelligence for the permanency of its institutions, will liberally patronize, not only science and native literature, but also the study of foreign languages, with a view of deriving aid from the intellectual labours and improvements of other nations. Among those languages which are attracting the attention of the scholar, the philologist and the statesman, none possesses more charms, excites more interest, or opens more sources of information and speculation, than the German. Formerly, it was rarely ever found included in a course of collegiate or general study. But as the beauties\* and wealth of German literature have become known and appreciated, its study has become more general. Now it finds able advocates in nearly all the respectable literary institutions of the land. New England, the Greece of the new world, where the rays of light are concentrated from every direction, and again reflected abroad, has the honour of being the first in this country to encourage and cultivate the study of the language in which Schiller and Göthe, Wieland and Bürger, Körner and Voss, Klopstock, Herder and Schlegel have rendered themselves immortal.

\* "I am so delighted when I meet any one who knows and loves my favourite Science (full of soul) German, that I could talk of it forever, I have no language, when I first became acquainted with it, the world of thought and feeling. I even the (land of oaks,) as Körner, when I had gained a city with it, Germans' Mans' Mans', page by H. F. Ch

If we regard the originality, the flexibility and the philosophy of the language, its Greek-like copiousness and similarity to English, its practical utility, and the richness of its literature, we have reason to be surprised that the study of it did not attract attention at an earlier period. Perhaps the principal cause of this indifference is to be traced to the difficulties of the Grammar. Indeed, the path which led the foreigner into the fields of German literature, was rugged and beset with thorns. Nearly all the German Grammars used in this and other countries, are mere translations from the German. As the German grammarians treat of *their own* language, known to their students, it is evident that such Grammars are of little service, without considerable advancement in a knowledge of the language. Every Grammar, and particularly one intended for the use of foreigners, should be not only a collection of rules, but also an introduction to the language, adapted to the wants of the learner. To overcome former difficulties, and to render the study of the German an easy and interesting task, was the object I had in view in writing this Grammar. It differs essentially from all others. The principal improvements in Etymology are those made in the declensions of nouns and adjectives, and in the arrangement of the irregular verbs. The nouns are divided according to their genders, into three classes or declensions, each of which is subdivided according to the different terminations of the genitive singular and nominative plural. (See page 18.) This arrangement greatly assists the memory, for when a class has two divisions, the knowledge of the nouns of the one will impart that of the other. So, when a declension has three divisions, by knowing the nouns of two, the scholar will know those of the third. The rules for the declension of adjectives have been reduced to one simple principle. The irregular verbs have been arranged in classes and divisions, so that the former difficulty attending their conjugation has nearly va-

nished. The striking characteristic of the Syntax is the division of sentences into absolute and dependent. (See page 116.) This division is natural and logical, and is indicated by grammatical principles peculiar to the German, and which prove the language to be systematical and philosophical in its construction. Without reference to other improvements, any competent and impartial judge, after an examination of those parts particularly mentioned, will not only admit their originality, but be able to appreciate the labour bestowed on the whole work. It is not pretended, however, that the work is perfect; other improvements might, undoubtedly, be made by devoting longer time to the subject; but yielding to the urgent solicitations of my scholars and my literary friends, I have consented to offer it to the public in its present state, not indeed as a Grammar complete in all respects, but as a pledge of the desire I feel of rendering some service to my adopted country, and of my resolution to promote a knowledge of my native language, by removing some of the difficulties which dishearten the student, and retard his progress. If I am so fortunate as to find my wishes partially accomplished by the success of my labours, I shall be encouraged to renew my efforts at some future period, to complete that which is left unfinished, to advance the work to a still greater perfection, and render it more useful and worthy of general approbation.

CASPAR J. BELEKÉ.

*Philadelphia, November 1st, 1840.*

## NOTE.

To those who use this work, I repeat Professor Buttmann's motto: "It must be remembered, that if the Grammar be the first book put into the learners' hands, it should also be the last to leave them." The learned philologist meant to say, that theory and practice should be united. The beginner, after being familiar with the sounds of the letters, should learn the principal rules of Etymology, and those of Collocation given under § 98, 127, 132, 133 and 134. Having thus obtained a general view of the Grammar, he should go over it again, try to become acquainted with all its particulars, write the practical exercises, and, at the same time, translate from German into English. To enable him to translate with facility and success, I shall, in a few weeks, publish a German Reader,\* containing interesting extracts from the best German writers. In the arrangement of the Reader, I have been guided by the best linguists, men of talent, judgment and experience; I, therefore, hope it will meet with general approbation. To acquire a facility in speaking, it is necessary for the student to commit phrases and dialogues to memory. For that purpose I highly recommend Ehrenfried's German and English Colloquial Phrases, published by Messrs. Hogan & Thomson, Philadelphia.

\* Apply to Messrs. Mentz & Son, No. 53, North Third Street, Philadelphia.

# CONTENTS.

---

## ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page
Chap. I. The Alphabet - - - - -	1
Chap. II. Sounds of Letters - - - - -	2
Chap. III. Division of Syllables - - - - -	6

## ETYMOLOGY.

Chap. I. A General View of the Parts of Speech - -	8
Chap. II. Of the Articles - - - - -	8
Chap. III. Of Nouns - - - - -	9
I. Genders of Nouns - - - - -	9
II. Declension of Nouns - - - - -	16
A. Declension of Common Nouns - -	16
B. Declension of Proper Names - -	34
Chap. IV. Of Pronouns - - - - -	37
I. Personal Pronouns - - - - -	37
II. Possessive Pronouns - - - - -	39
III. Demonstrative Pronouns - - - - -	44
IV. Relative Pronouns - - - - -	46
V. Interrogative Pronouns - - - - -	46
VI. Indefinite Pronouns - - - - -	48
Chap. V. Of Adjectives - - - - -	50
A. Absolute Form - - - - -	50
B. Declension of Adjectives - - - - -	53
Chap. VI. Of Numerals - - - - -	59
I. Cardinal Numbers - - - - -	59
II. Ordinal Numbers - - - - -	61
III. Compounds formed from Cardinal Numbers	62
IV. Compounds formed from Ordinal Numbers	63
Chap. VII. Of Verbs - - - - -	65
A. Regularity of Verbs - - - - -	65

	Page
I. Simple Forms - - -	65
II. Compound Forms - - -	67
B. Irregularity of Verbs - - -	68
Conjugation of Verbs - - -	68
I. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verbs - - -	68
1. Haben, to have - - -	68
2. Sein, to be - - -	70
3. Werden, to become - - -	72
II. Conjugation of a Regular Transitive Verb - - -	74
1. Active Form - - -	74
2. Passive Form - - -	76
3. Reflective Form - - -	77
III. Intransitive Verbs - - -	79
Impersonal Verbs - - -	83
Verbs compounded with Particles - - -	84
I. Inseparable Particles - - -	84
II. Separable Particles - - -	85
III. Particles which are both Separable and Inseparable - - -	86
Irregular Verbs - - -	88
Chap. VIII. Of Adverbs - - -	102
Chap. IX. Of Conjunctions - - -	108
Chap. X. Of Prepositions - - -	109
Chap. XI. Of Interjections - - -	110
Chap. XII. Of the Formation of Words - - -	110
A. Derivation of Words - - -	111
B. Composition of Words - - -	113

## SYNTAX.

Preliminary Remarks - - -	116
---------------------------	-----

## FIRST PART OF SYNTAX.

*Government and Agreement of Words.*

Chap. I. Nominative - - -	118
Chap. II. Oblique Cases - - -	120
A. Oblique Cases governed by Adjectives.	
I. Adjectives governing the Genitive - - -	120
II. Adjectives governing the Dative - - -	121
III. Adjectives governing the Accusative - - -	122
B. Oblique Cases governed by Verbs.	
I. Verbs governing the Genitive - - -	122
II. Verbs governing the Dative - - -	124
III. Verbs governing the Accusative - - -	126
C. Oblique Cases governed by Prepositions.	
I. Prepositions governing the Genitive - - -	129
II. Prepositions governing the Dative - - -	130

## Page

III. Prepositions governing the Genitive and Dative	-	-	-	130
IV. Prepositions governing the Accusative	-	-	-	131
V. Prepositions governing the Dative and Accusative	-	-	-	131
Compound Prepositions	-	-	-	132
D. Oblique Cases standing Absolutely	-	-	-	132
Chap. III. Qualifying terms of Nouns	-	-	-	134
A. Of the proper use of the Article	-	-	-	134
B. One Noun qualified by another	-	-	-	137
C. Nouns qualified by Adjectives	-	-	-	140
D. Nouns qualified by Numbers	-	-	-	141
E. Nouns qualified by Pronouns	-	-	-	142
F. Nouns qualified indirectly : 1. By Dependent Sentences : 2. By Adverbial Terms	-	-	-	143
Chapter IV. Verbs.	-	-	-	146
A. Numbers and Persons	-	-	-	146
B. Tenses	-	-	-	148
C. Moods	-	-	-	150

## SECOND PART OF SYNTAX.

*Collocation of Words.*

Chap. I. Collocation of Words in Absolute Sentences.				
A. Common Collocation.				
General Rules	-	-	-	156
Particular Rules for the Position of Adjuncts.				
I. Adjuncts of the Noun	-	-	-	157
II. Adjuncts of the Verb.				
1. Infinitive Mood	-	-	-	159
2. Finite Tenses	-	-	-	160
B. Inversion.				
I. Inversion of the Adjuncts of the Verb	-	-	-	166
II. Inversion of the Verb	-	-	-	168
III. Inversion of Adjectives	-	-	-	170
Chap. II. Collocation of Words in Dependent Sentences				171
Chap. III. Co-ordinate Sentences				179
Observations on the English Participles in reference to the German language	-	-	-	181

## APPENDIX.

German Handwriting	-	-	-	187
<i>Practical Exercises.</i>				
A. Absolute Sentences.				
I. Exercises on the Auxiliary Verbs	-	-	-	200

	Page
II. Exercises on the Conjugation of Regular Verbs	202
III. Exercises on the different Classes of Irregular Verbs	203
IV. Exercise on the proper use of the Auxiliary Verbs	207
V. Exercise on the Particles	208
VI. An Adjective Predicate joined to the Subject by means of an Auxiliary Verb	210
VII. Oblique Cases	211
VIII. Exercises on the Prepositions	213
IX. Exercises on the different Numbers	215
B. Dependent Sentences in connexion with Absolute Sentences	217
C. Mixed Sentences and Phrases	220
D. Miscellaneous Subjects	222
Exercises in Reading	224
Familiar Dialogues	226

# ORTHOGRAPHY.

## CHAPTER I.

### THE ALPHABET.

#### (§ 1.) I. *Simple Letters.*

Letters.	Names.	English.
A, a, .....	ah, .....	A, a.
Ä, ä, .....	the French ai .....	Ä, ä.
B, b, .....	bay, .....	B, b.
C, c, .....	tsay, .....	C, c.
D, d, .....	day, .....	D, d.
E, e, .....	a, .....	E, e.
F, f, .....	ef, .....	F, f.
G, g, .....	ghay, .....	G, g.
H, h, .....	hah, .....	H, h.
I, i, .....	e, .....	I, i.
J, j, .....	yot, .....	J, j.
K, k, .....	kah, .....	K, k.
L, l, .....	el, .....	L, l.
M, m, .....	em, .....	M, m.
N, n, .....	en, .....	N, n.
O, o, .....	o, .....	O, o.
Ö, ö, .....	the French eu, .....	Ö, ö.
P, p, .....	pay, .....	P, p.
Q, q, .....	koo, .....	Q, q.
R, r, .....	err, .....	R, r.
S, s, .....	ess, .....	S, s.
T, t, .....	tay, .....	T, t.
U, u, .....	oo, .....	U, u.
Ü, ü, .....	the French u, .....	Ü, ü.

B, b, .....	fow, ....	V, v.
W, w, .....	vay, .....	W, w.
X, x, .....	iks, .....	X, x.
Y, y, .....	ipsilon, .....	Y, y.
Z, * z, .....	tsett, .....	Z, z.

(§ 2.) II. *Compound Letters.*

1. DIPHTHONGS.

ei,	ai,	au,	eu,	äu,	oi,	ui.
ei,	ai,	au,	eu,	äu,	oi,	ui.

These diphthongs are named according to their sounds.  
See § 4.

2. COMPOUND CONSONANTS.

ch,	ck,	ff,	pf,	ph,	sch,	ss,	st,	sz,	th,	tz.
ch,	ck,	ff,	pf,	ph,	sch,	ss,	st,	sz,	th,	tz.

The names of these compound letters, are obtained by combining the names of the simple letters of which they are composed ; as, ch, tsay-hah ; ff, ef-ef ; sch, ess-tsay-hah.

## CHAPTER II.

### SOUNDS OF LETTERS.†

(§ 3.) I. *Sounds of the Vowels.*

a, is sounded nearly like a in *father* ; as, Mann, man ; Ball, ball.

ä, nearly like ai in *fair* ; as, Bär, bear ; Hände, hands.

\* The capital letters are used in German, when they are required in English. Moreover, in German, every substantive, all words used substantively, the pronouns corresponding to you, your, yours, and Ein, one, used emphatically, commence with a capital letter. The pronoun ich, I, begins with a small letter, except when it commences a sentence or is used as a substantive.

† The exact German pronunciation cannot be perfectly represented by English letters, but must be learned by listening to a correct pronunciation.

- e**, when long, nearly like *ay* in *ray*; as, *beben*, to tremble; but when short, like *e* in *met*; as, *Bett*, bed.
- i**, (**y**), like *e* in *me*; as, *mir*, to me; *Mitte*, middle.
- o**, like *o* in *promote*; as, *loben*, to praise; *oben*, above.
- ö**, has no corresponding sound in English; it is sounded like the French *eu* in *peu*; as, *Söhne*, sons; *Flöte*, flute.
- u**, like *oo* in *fool*; as, *du*, thou; *Blume*, flower.
- ü**, has no corresponding vowel in English; it is sounded like the French *u* in *vu*; as, *Mühle*, mill; *Mütter*, mothers.

REMARKS.

1. Instead of two dots over **a**, **o**, **u**, a small **e** is frequently placed after them, or in print, also on the top of them; as, *Göthe*, *Goethe*, or *Göthe*, but the first form has the preference.
2. Two vowels of the same kind, merely protract the sound; as in *Seele*, soul; *Saal*, hall. But when the vowels **ee** belong to different syllables, each of them is to be pronounced; as in *beerdigen*, to inter.
3. Formerly the letter **y**, was frequently used instead of **i** or **ü**, but, at present, it seldom occurs, except in proper names and in words derived from the Greek; as, *York*, *System*, system.
4. The vowel **e** after **i**, is not sounded, but merely protracts the sound of **i**; as, *Bier*, beer; *Melodie*, melody. But both of the vowels **ie** are to be pronounced, when they stand instead of **iee**; as in *Anie*, the same as *Annee*, knees; *Melodien*, the same as *Melodieen*, melodies; and also in some words of foreign origin; as, *Spanien*, Spain; *Spanier*, Spaniard.

(§ 4.) II. *Sounds of the Diphthongs.*

- ei**, like *i* in *mine*; as, *fein*, fine; *Freiheit*, freedom.
- ai**, has nearly the same sound as **ei**, but a little more open; as, *Kaiser*, emperor; *Mai*, May.
- au**, nearly like *ou* in *mouse*; as, *Haus*, house; *Sauerkraut*, sour-kraut.
- eu**, cannot be exactly represented in any modern language, the nearest sound to it in English, is that of *oi* in *noise*; as, *Feuer*, fire; *Europa*, Europe.
- äu**, almost like **eu**, but a little more open; as, *Mäuse*, mice; *Häuser*, houses.
- oi**, nearly the same as *oi* in *hoist*; it occurs very seldom.
- ui**, nearly like *we*; as, *pfui!* *fy!* it occurs very rarely.

REMARK.—The vowels which constitute diphthongs, are sounded separately, when they belong to different syllables, as in *beurtheilen*, to judge; *Atheist*, Atheist.

### (§ 5.) III. *Sounds of Consonants.*

- b**, at the beginning of syllables, like *b*; as, *bleiben*, to remain: otherwise like *bp*; as in *Lob*, praise; *Abt*, abbot; *Herbst*, autumn. But in *Ebbe*, ebb, the *b* retains the sound of *b*.
- c**, before the vowels, *a, o, u*, at the end of syllables, and before consonants, is sounded like *k*;\* as, *Cato*, *Spectakel*, *Classe*. But before *e, i, (y,)* *ä, ö, ü*, it is sounded like *ts*; as, *Cicero*, *Cäsar*, *Centner*.
- ch**, has also two different sounds:

1. At the beginning of words, before *a, o, u, l, r*, and before the letter *ß*, belonging to the same syllable, it sounds like *k*; as, *Charakter*, *Chor*, *Sechß*, *Flachß*.—But if the *ß* is only a grammatical termination; as in *Dachß*, the genitive of *Dach*, or belongs to the following syllable, *ch* is pronounced as under the following rule.

2. Before *e, i, (y,)* or after vowels and consonants, *ch* sounds like *g* in the Spanish word *gimio*, or like *j* in *oveja*. But this sound can be learned correctly only by hearing it pronounced; as, *Chymie*, *China*, *richten*, to judge; *Furcht*; fruit; *Milch*.†

- d**, at the beginning of syllables, like *d*; as, *Damm*, dam; *bedenken*, to think; otherwise like *dt*; as *blind*, blind; *schädlich*, injurious.—It is sounded rather softly, when, by contraction, an *e* has been omitted after it; as in *Handlung*, the same as, *Handelung*, action.
- f**, like *f*; as, *fünf*, five; *fett*, fat.
- g**, at the beginning of words, like *g* hard;‡ as in *Gast*, guest: at the end and sometimes in the middle of words, it has an intermediate sound between *g* hard and the soft *ch* in *rich*—

\* Accordingly, *ck* is sounded like *ff*, and sometimes it is also spelled in this manner.

† When *c* and *ch* sound like *f*, some writers substitute *f* in place of them, particularly in foreign words which are considered naturalized in German. Thus, instead of *Charakter*, some write *Karakter*.

‡ In some parts of Germany it has a soft sound.

ten; as, *Regen*, rain; *Weg*, way. In words taken from the French, it is sounded as in that language; as, *Genie*, *logieren*.

**h**, at the beginning of a syllable, like *h*; as, *hier*, here; *haben*, to have. After a vowel, in the middle or at the end of a syllable, it is not sounded and only protracts the sound of the preceding vowel; as, *mehr*, more; *Schuh*, shoe. It is also silent after *t* and *r*; as in *bethen*, to pray; *Rhein*, Rhine.

**j**, like *y* in *year*; as, *ja*, yes.

**k**, like *k*; as, *Rahn*, boat; *Bank*, bench.

**l**, like *l*; as, *Lilie*, lily.

**m**, like *m*; as, *Mutter*, mother; *Ramm*, comb.

**n**, like *n*; as, *nennen*, to name.

**p**, like *p*; as, *Pumpe*, pump.

**ph**, like *f*; as, *Philosophie*.

**q**, together with the following *u*, is sounded nearly like *qu* in *queen*; as, *Quelle*, source.

**r**, like *r* but rather stronger; as, *Arm*, arm.

**s**, like *s*; as, *Sommer*, summer; *Hauss*, house.

REMARK. — The character **ß** is used only at the end of syllables.

**ß**, compounded of **f** and **z**, is sometimes sounded like a simple **s**; as in *groß*, and sometimes like **sz**; as in *Haß*, hatred.

REMARK. — When the sharp double consonant **ß** happens to be placed between two short vowels, **ff** is substituted in place of it; otherwise, **ß** is to be retained; as, *reißen*, to tear; *Pres. ich reiße*; *Imp. ich riß, du risset, er riß, wir rissen, &c.*; *Past Part. gerissen*. But some writers never use **ß** between two vowels, but in place of it, they use **ff**, and sometimes simply **f**. — Instead of **ßet** or **ßt**, modern writers frequently use simply **st**.

**sch**, commonly like *sh*; as, *Busch*, bush; *Schule*, school; *schreiben*, to write. Before some consonants, the sound of **ch** in **sch**, is not very perceptible; as for instance in *schwimmen*, to swim; *schlafen*, to sleep; *schmeißen*, to throw; *schnupfen*, to snuff.

**t**, like *t*; as, *Tante*, aunt; *Tapete*, tapestry.

If the syllable **ti**, is followed by a vowel, **t** takes the sound of **ts**; as, *Nation*, *Portion*.

**v**, exactly like *f*; as, **Vater**, father; **Better**, nephew.

But it has the sound of the English *v* in words belonging to foreign languages; as, **November**.

**w**, like *v*; as, **Wetter**, weather; **Wasser**, water.

**x**, like *x*; as, **Alexander**, **Ferres**.

**z**, like *ts*; as, **Zimmer**, room; **zehn**, ten.

**ß**, like *ts*, but stronger and sharper; as, **Blitz**, lightning.

**§** Some authors use also **§§** instead of **ß**, particularly in dividing syllables.

**REMARK.**— Words of modern languages, preserve in German their original spelling and pronunciation. Thus, *monsieur*, *Voltaire*, *Shakspeare*, are sounded in German as in their respective languages. But those of the ancient languages, are generally pronounced according to the German idiom.

### CHAPTER III.

#### (§ 6.) *Division of Syllables.*

The general rule for division is: “*Divide, as you speak.*” Accordingly:

1. A simple consonant between two vowels, is joined to the latter; as, **blu-tig**, bloody; **schrei-ben**, to write. Except the letter *r*; as, **Hex-en**, witches.

2. Of two consonants, meeting between two vowels, one is joined to the preceding and the other to the following syllable; as, **fal-len**, to fall; **fön-nen**, to be able. But **ch**, **sch**, **ph**, **th**, **ß**, **ff**, are not separated; as, **ma-chen**, to make; **wa-chen**, to watch. So also, any other two consonants, proper to commence a word, may likewise commence a syllable; as, **ha-stig**, hasty; **Wes-pe**, wasp.

**REMARK.**— **ff**, **ß**, **ß**, are commonly joined to the preceding syllable. Those who consider **ff** equal to **ff**, make use of these two letters and separate them in dividing syllables; as, **ba-f-fen**, to bake.

3. When three or four consonants, which are not proper to begin a syllable, meet between two vowels, such of them as can begin a syllable, belong to the latter, the rest to the former syl-

lable; as, *Menschen*, men; *Fenster*, window; (die) *Deutschen*, the Germans.

4. A word compounded of several words, is divided according to the words of which it consists; as, *hier-in*, herein; *war-um*, why; *voll-enden*, to accomplish.

OBSERVATION.—Of late, many German writers divide words according to their derivation, without reference to the pronunciation; as, *Mensch-en*, *schreib-en*, *fall-en*, *wach-en*. We may adopt this principle, but we should avoid having the vowel *e* standing by itself. Hence we should divide *Büs-che*, and not *Büsch-e*, bushes.

# ETYMOLOGY.

## CHAPTER I.

### (§ 7.) *A General View of the Parts of Speech.*

THERE are ten parts of speech ; namely, the Article, Noun or Substantive, Pronoun, Adjective, Numeral, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection. The article, noun, pronoun, adjective, some numerals, and the verb, are inflected ; but the other parts of speech are not.

The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation* ; that of other words, *declension*. Declension has two numbers, *singular* and *plural*. Each number has four cases ; viz. the *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, and *accusative*. There is no particular form in German for the *vocative* and *ablative* ; the former is represented by the nominative, and the latter by the dative with a proper preposition.

Nouns, as we shall see in the third chapter, are either *masculine*, *feminine* or *neuter*. Accordingly, those declinable terms which qualify them, have in the singular a particular form for each gender, except that the genitive and dative of the masculine, are the same as the genitive and dative of the neuter, and that in the feminine, the nominative is like the accusative and the genitive like the dative. In the plural, each case has but one form for all three genders.

## CHAPTER II.

### OF THE ARTICLES.

There are two articles in German, the definite and the indefinite.

#### (§ 8.) 1. *Indefinite Article.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	ein,	eine,	ein,	a.
<i>Gen.</i>	eines,	einer,	eines,	of a.
<i>Dat.</i>	einem,	einer,	einem,	to a.
<i>Acc.</i>	einen,	eine,	ein,	a.

(§ 9.) 2. *Definite Article.*

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	der,	die,	das, the.
<i>Gen.</i>	des,	der,	des, of the.
<i>Dat.</i>	dem,	der,	dem, to the.
<i>Acc.</i>	den,	die,	das, the.

*Plural for the three genders.*

<i>Nom.</i>	die, the.
<i>Gen.</i>	der, of the.
<i>Dat.</i>	den, to the.
<i>Acc.</i>	die, the.

REMARK.

Dem and das are frequently contracted with a preceding preposition, by joining their final letter to it. But, when the preposition before dem ends in n, this n is omitted; as,

Am, instead of, an dem; as, am Abend, in the evening.  
 auß, - - auf das; as, auß Eis, upon the ice.  
 beim, - - bei dem; as, beim Himmel, by heaven.  
 fürs, - - für das; as, fürs Vaterland, for the country.  
 im, - - in dem; as, im Hause, in the house.  
 ins, - - in das; as, ins Feld, into the field.  
 zum, - - zu dem; as, zum Troste, for consolation.

The feminine article is contracted only with the preposition zu; as, zur instead of zu der.

CHAPTER III.

OF NOUNS.

I. *Genders of Nouns.*

There are three genders in German; viz. the masculine, feminine and neuter.

(§ 10.) GENERAL RULES.

1. *Genders of Man.*—The grammatical gender of man is founded on nature; as, der Mann, husband; die Frau, wife;

der Bruder, brother; die Schwester, sister; der Sohn, son; die Tochter, daughter; der Knecht, male-servant; die Magd, female-servant; &c. But Kind, child, is ranked with the neuter gender, because it is merely viewed as a product, without any regard to sex. The idea of child, implies that of smallness, weakness, dependence, charm and amability. — As the diminutives always convey the idea of smallness or charm, they are all of the neuter gender; as, das Söhnlein, the little son.\*

The word Weib, *n.* woman, without reference to the natural gender, seems to be intended merely to denote some characteristic quality; as, amability or dependence. — Mensch, is commonly of the masculine gender, but sometimes it is ranked with the neuter, and then it denotes a want of moral strength. Frauenzimmer, lady, is neuter, according to the rules of compounds. See § 12.

2. *Genders of Animals.* — Language imitates nature with respect to all those animals with which we are quite familiar and in which the distinction of gender is obvious; as, der Bär, bear; die Sau, sow; der Stier or der Ochse, bull; die Kuh, cow; &c.

When the particular genders are obvious, and expressed by particular terms, as in the preceding examples, the generic names which denote both genders at the same time, are neuter; as, das Pferd, horse; das Ross, steed; das Schwein, swine; das Schaf, sheep; das Huhn, chicken. — So also the more general terms: das Thier, animal; das Vieh, beast; das Wild, game; das Gewürm, vermin; das Geflügel, poultry. The young of animals and the diminutives, are also of the neuter gender, for the same reason as das Kind, and das Söhnlein. Therefore we say: das Kalb, calf; das Lamm, lamb; das Ferkel, pig; das Füllen, colt; das Vögelein, little bird; das Pferdchen, little horse.

It seems to be very consistent in German, to rank most foreign animals with the neuter gender, since they are little

---

\* The diminutives may be formed from any noun, by adding the syllable *lein* or *chen* and by changing the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into the corresponding vowels *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, and *au* into *äu*; as, das Brüderchen, little brother, from Bruder; das Mägdlein, little girl, from Magd; das Fräulein, lady, from Frau; das Mädchen, girl, from the obsolete word Mad or Mäde, from which the rare term das Mädelein, or abbreviated, Mädel, is derived. — If the noun terminates in *ch*, *g*, or *sch*, the syllable *el* is inserted before *chen*; as, das Buch, book: das Büchlein, little book.

known. Thus we say: *das Kamel, das Lama, das Krokodil, das Dromedar, das Zebra, das Gnu, das Chamäleon.*

As for all other animals, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to, language, without any reference to the natural sex, ranks the great and vigorous with the masculine gender, and the small with the feminine. Accordingly:

*a.* The generic names of quadrupeds are generally of the masculine gender; as, *der Fuchs*, fox; *der Hirsch*, stag; *der Hase*, hare; *der Affe*, ape. But *Maus*, mouse, the smallest of the quadrupeds, is of the feminine gender. So likewise we say: *die Ratte*, rat, although we find *der Rät*. — *Ratte*, *f.* cat, and *Gemse*, *f.* chamois, represent their female sex, and serve at the same time as generic terms.

*b.* The birds of prey, the larger domestic birds, and others long known, are all of the masculine gender; as, *der Adler*, eagle; *der Geier*, vulture; *der Falke*, falcon; *der Habicht*, hawk; *der Rabe*, raven; *der Strauß*, ostrich; *der Storch*, stork; *der Kranich*, crane; *der Schwan*, swan; *der Pfau*, peacock.

It is probably owing to some superstitious notions, that *Eule*, owl; *Krehe*, crow; *Dohle*, jack-daw; *Elster*, magpie, are of the feminine gender. — *Die Gans*, goose; *die Ente*, duck; *die Taube*, dove, are naturally of the feminine gender, and they are also used as generic terms. — *Das Huhn*, chicken, is both a generic term and the name of the female in particular.

The small singing birds are generally of the feminine gender; as, *die Nachtigal*, nightingale; *die Lerche*, lark; *die Wachtel*, quail; *die Schwalbe*, swallow; *die Drossel*, thrush. — But *Sperling*, sparrow; *Staar*, starling; *Finke*, finch; *Hänfling*, linnet; *Zeisig*, green-finch; *Zaunfönig*, hedge-sparrow, are of the masculine gender, the two last, because they are presented in fables as kings of birds, and the others on account of their boldness.

*c.* Of the fishes, the greater kinds are of the masculine gender; as, *Wallfisch*, whale; *Hecht*, pike; *Hal*, eel. The smaller kinds are both masculine and feminine; as, *der Karpfen* or *die Karpfe*, carp; *der Gründling* or *die Gründel*, groundling. But *Forelle*, trout, is only of the feminine gender.

*d.* The different kinds of reptiles and vermin, and hence all small insects, are of the feminine gender; as, *die Schlange*, snake; *die Raupe*, caterpillar; *die Ameise*, ant; *die Biene*, bee;

die *Wespe*, wasp; die *Fliege*, fly; die *Laus*, louse; die *Spinne*, spider.

*Exceptions.* — *Molch*, salamander; *Frosch*, frog; *Wurm*, worm; *Krebs*, crab; *Käfer*, beetle, are of the masculine gender.

In all the preceding cases, when the grammatical gender does not coincide with the natural sex, we find, that the masculine gender conveys the idea of strength or superior activity, and that the feminine implies weakness and inaction. This explains, why the active female bee, *der Weichsel*, is of the masculine, and the inactive male, *die Drohne*, of the feminine gender.

3. *Genders of the Inanimate Objects and Abstract Nouns.* — The three genders are also applied to inanimate objects and to abstract nouns. As is yet frequently the case in poetry, language originally personified almost every thing, and the particular gender may have been founded on analogy, or on the impression made upon the senses, so that those nouns, which conveyed the idea of superior power, were ranked with the masculine gender, and those, which denote what is naturally or comparatively tender and delicate, with the feminine. Thus we say: *der Muth*, courage; *der Hammer*, hammer; *der Baum*, tree; *der Stein*, stone; *der Fels*, rock; *der Pfeffer*, pepper; *der Wein*, wine; *der Donner und der Blitz*, thunder and lightning: and on the other hand, we say: *die Blume*, flower; *die Rose*, rose; *die Nelke*, pink; *die Tulpe*, tulip; *die Pfirsche*, peach; *die Pflaume*, plum; *die Birne*, pear; *die Milch*, milk; *die Butter*, butter; *die Wolke*, cloud; *die Luft*, air.

But the idea of power, which, as in the preceding examples, seems to determine the gender, is but relative, so that that which by itself appears strong or delicate, may seem very different, when contrasted with other objects. Did we exactly know the relations and contrasts, in which each object was originally viewed, the genders of many nouns would appear less arbitrary, than they are generally considered.

The gender of many nouns is probably founded on mythological notions, according to which, some inanimate objects were originally viewed, not only as animated, but even as a pair; as, *die Sonne\* und der Mond*, sun and moon; *der Himmel*

---

\* The feminine gender of *Sonne* is probably owing to his mother-like influence, and as the moon seems to form a contrast, she was ranked with the masculine gender.

und die Erde, heaven and earth; der Tag und die Nacht, day and night.

It is, no doubt, likewise owing to mythological notions, that the names of the winds, seasons, months, and the days of the week, are of the masculine gender. The names of the seasons are: Frühling, Sommer, Herbst, Winter. The months are: Januar, Februar, März, April, Mai, Juni, Juli, August, September, October, November, December. The days of the week: Montag, Dienstag, Mittwoch, Donnerstag, Freitag, Samstag, Sonntag.

The neuter gender of inanimate objects and abstract nouns, may, for the most part, be traced in the same manner, as that of animate objects.

a. All diminutives are of the neuter gender; as, das Blümlein, little flower; das Veilchen, violet.

b. It is probable, that many objects were originally viewed only as products of man, nature, or animals, and therefore ranked with the neuter gender, like Kind and all the young of animals. Nouns of this kind may be: Bild, image; Beet, garden-bed; Blatt, leaf; Ei, egg; Laub, foliage; Gras, grass; Heu, hay; Feld, field; Buch, book; Faß, barrel; Geld, money; Glas, glass; Grab, grave; Haus, house; Kleid, dress; Lied, song; Loch, hole; Nest, nest; Wort, word; &c.

Other objects, it seems, were not so much viewed as products, but rather considered in their peculiar functions, and hence denoted by nouns of either the masculine or feminine gender; as, der Hut, hat; der Rock, coat; der Schuh, shoe; die Weste, vest.

c. As Pferd, Schwein, &c. are of the neuter gender, because they have no reference to the particular sex, so likewise the general denominations of things, are commonly neuter; as, Licht, light; Wasser, water; Holz, wood; Blut, blood; Horn, horn; Glas, glass; Tuch, cloth; Salz, salt; Erz, ore; Gold, gold; Silber, silver; Zinn, tin; Blei, lead; and all metals, except: die Platina, der Stahl, steel; der Zink, zinc; der Tomback, pinchbeck; and others of modern discovery.

But the particular kinds of things, according to their relations and contrasts with other objects, are either masculine or feminine, and may be said to hold the same relation to the corresponding general terms, that der Bär and die Sau hold to das Schwein. Thus, das Gebirge signifies a whole chain of mountains; but der Berg denotes one single mountain. Das

*Wetter* denotes weather in general; but speaking of a particular kind of weather, we say: *der Regen*, rain; *der Hagel*, hail; *der Schnee*, snow; *die Luft*, air. So likewise we say, *das Wasser*, water, in general; but we say: *der Fluß*, river; *der Bach*, brook; *die See*, sea. *Das Korn* signifies grain in general; but the particular kinds of grain are: *der Weizen*, wheat; *der Roggen*, rye; *die Gerste*, barley; *der Haber*, oats.

Not only nouns, which denote matter in a general manner, but also abstract nouns which are taken in their whole extension, are of the neuter gender; for instance, all infinitives; as, *das Leiden*, suffering; *das Leben*, life; and other words which are used as substantives, without being such originally; as, *das Ich*, the I, i. e. the self; *das Gute*, the good; *das Aber*, the but; and the letters of the alphabet; as, *das A*; *das B*; because the letters are general characters, by which particular words or expressions are formed.

The names of countries, provinces, and almost all the names of cities, towns, and villages, are neuter, even when in compounds the last word is masculine or feminine; as, *das glückliche Amerika*, happy America; *das volkreiche Europa*, populous Europe; *das schöne Berlin*, the beautiful Berlin.

*Exceptions.*—*Die Mark*, *die Lausitz*, *die Pfalz*, *die Schweiz* and those in *ei* and *au*; as, *die Türkei*.

The gender of countries is perhaps also founded on the relation of something general to something special, or of a whole to its constituent parts.

#### (§ 11.) PARTICULAR RULES, POINTING OUT THE GENDER BY THE TERMINATIONS OF NOUNS.

##### 1. *Masculine Gender.*

Nouns of this gender are:

a. All derivatives, terminating in *ing* and *ling*; as, *der Jüngling*, young man; *der Fremdling*, stranger. Except *das Messing*, brass.

b. Almost all radical words in *all*; as, *der Stall*, stable; *der Ball*, ball.

c. Almost all derivatives in *el* and *er*; as, *der Schüler*, scholar; *der Spieler*, player; *der Zweifel*, doubt.

d. Most derivatives in *en*; as, *der Graben*, ditch.

**Exceptions.**—Infinitives used as nouns, are of the neuter gender; as, *das Leben*, life; and so likewise the following nouns: *das Eisen*, iron; *das Kissen*, cushion; *das Füllen*, foal; *das Wappen*, coat of arms; *das Zeichen*, sign; *die Fasten*, lent.

*e.* Nouns terminating in *ß*; as, *der Schuß*, protection; *der Blitz*, lightning.

*f.* Nouns terminating in *ich* and most in *ig*; as, *der Strich*, stroke; *der Stich*, sting.

## 2. Feminine Gender.

Nouns of this gender are:

*a.* All derivatives in *gend*, *heit*, *feit*, *schaft*, *ung*, *inn*; as, *die Tugend*, virtue; *die Freiheit*, liberty; *die Freundschaft*, friendship. Except *der Hornung*, the old German name of February.

*b.* All nouns derived from the Latin, and terminating in *on*, *ät*, *nz*; as, *die Nation*, *die Universität*, *die Conferenz*.

*c.* Most nouns terminating in *e*, *ei*, *au*, *eu*, *uld*, *ur*, *acht*, *ucht*, *ft*; as, *die Malerei*, painting; *die Seele*, soul; *die Sau*, sow; *die Macht*, power; *die Vernunft*, reason.

## 3. Neuter Gender.

To this gender belong:

*a.* Nouns terminating in *thum*; as, *das Eigenthum*, property; *das Bisthum*, bishopric.

**Exceptions.**—*Der Reichthum*, wealth; *der Irrthum*, error; *der* or *das Wachsthum*, growth.

*b.* All diminutives in *lein* and *chen*; as, *das Söhnchen*, little son; *das Fräulein*, lady.

*c.* All infinitives used as nouns; as, *das Leben*, life.

*d.* All substantives terminating in *cht* and commencing with *ge*; as, *das Gesicht*, face; *das Gedicht*, poem.

### (§ 12.) REMARK.

The gender of compound substantives depends upon the last word which enters into the composition; as, *das Vaterland*, country—from *Vater*, *m.* and *Land*, *n.*; *das Wörterbuch*, dictionary—from *Wörter*, *n.* and *Buch*, *n.*; *der Steuermann*, steersman—from *Steuer*, *n.* and *Mann*, *m.*; *die Ofenpfeife*, stovepipe—from *Ofen*, *m.* and *Pfeife*, *f.*

## II. Declension of Nouns.

### A. Declension of Common Nouns.

#### (§ 13.) GENERAL RULES.

We shall divide nouns, according to their genders, into three classes, which we call declensions, so that the characteristic mark of each class or of each declension, will be the gender, denoted by a particular article. To decline a noun of any class, we must know the *genitive singular* and the *nominative plural*, and according to the terminations of these two cases, we shall subdivide the classes into divisions, as the following table indicates.—Whilst nouns of the feminine gender are unchangeable in the singular number, nouns of the neuter gender take in the genitive singular *s* or *es*, and when *es*, they also commonly take *e* in the dative. But *Herz*, heart, has *Herzens* in the genitive, and *Herzen* in the dative. The accusative of neuter nouns is like the nominative. The declension of masculine nouns differs, in the singular, from that of neuter nouns, only in the preceding article, and in some nouns, which take *en* or *n* in the genitive and keep this termination throughout all the following cases both singular and plural.—The nominative plural of the different classes, is either like the nominative singular, or it takes the termination *e*, *en* (*n*) or *er*, but never *es*, except in some French nouns. When we know the nominative plural, we know, at the same time, all the other cases of the same number; for if the nominative plural terminates in *n*, all the other cases are like it; but if the nominative plural does not terminate in *n*, then, no matter what its termination may be, the other cases still are like it, except the dative, which always terminates in *n*.—In the plural number of some nouns, the vowels, *a*, *o*, *u* are changed into the corresponding vowels, *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, and the double vowels, *aa*, into *ä*; *oo* into *ö*; and the diphthong *au* into *äu*. The nouns, which undergo this change of vowels, are: 1. All those, which take, in the nominative plural, the syllable *er*; as, *das Buch*, book, *Plur. die Bücher*; *der Mann*, man, *Plur. die Männer*. 2. All feminine nouns, terminating in the nominative plural in *e*, and most masculine nouns with the same termination; as, *die Hand*, hand, *Nom. Plur. die Hände*; *die Maus*, mouse, *Nom. Plur. die Mäuse*; *der Saal*, saloon, *Nom. Plur. die Säle*. 3. Also some masculine nouns, ter-

minating in the nominative singular, in *er, el, en* ; as, *der Bruder*, brother, *Nom. Plur. die Brüder* ; and the two feminine nouns *Mutter* and *Tochter*, *Nom. Plur. Mütter* and *Töchter*. But this change of vowels never occurs in any noun, terminating in the nominative plural in *n*, nor in those neuter nouns which take *e* in the nominative plural, or which have the nominative plural like the nominative singular. Except *das Kloster*, cloister, *Nom. Plur. die Klöster* ; *das Floß*, float, *Nom. Plur. die Flöße*.

It is immaterial, which gender we call the first, the second, or the third declension ; but as in the other parts of speech, which have different genders, the masculine precedes the feminine, and both, the neuter, we shall observe the same order with respect to nouns, and treat in the *first declension of masculine*, in the *second of feminine*, and in the *third of neuter nouns*. And in these different declensions, we shall speak only of simple nouns ; for in compounds, only the last noun is declined ; as, *Nom. der Hausvater*, *Gen. des Hausvaters*, *Dat. dem Hausvater*, *Acc. den Hausvater*, *Nom. Plur. die Hausväter*, &c.

The table on the following page exhibits the terminations, which are added to the nominative singular of common nouns, to form the various cases.

Cases.	FIRST DECLENSION. MASCULINE GENDER.			SECOND DECLENSION. FEMININE GENDER.		THIRD DECLENSION. NEUTER GENDER.	
	First Division.	Second Division.	Third Division.			First Division.	Second Division.
SINGULAR.	<i>Nom.</i>					<i>der - sel - ige</i> <i>der - sel - ige</i>	
	<i>Gen.</i>	en or n	ē			ē	ēē
	<i>Dat.</i>	en or n	e				e
	<i>Acc.</i>	en or n					
PLURAL.	<i>Nom.</i>	en or n	e	en or n	e		er e
	<i>Gen.</i>	en or n	e	en or n	e		e
	<i>Dat.</i>	en or n	en	en or n	en	n	en
	<i>Acc.</i>	en or n	e	en or n	e		e
Irregularities.	A few nouns of the third division, take, in the Nom. Plur. the termination er; and there are some other nouns, which in the Plur. are declined according to the first division, whilst in the Sing. they are inflected according to the second or third.			The nominative plural of <i>Mutter</i> and <i>Tochter</i> , is <i>Mütter</i> and <i>Töchter</i> .		Some few nouns of this declension have, in the plural number, the termination en or n.	

PARTICULAR RULES REFERRING TO THE PRECEDING TABLE.

(§ 14.) FIRST DECLENSION.

The nouns of this declension, which are all of the masculine gender, and have the article *der*, will be viewed under three divisions.

(§ 15.) FIRST DIVISION.

The nouns of this division form the genitive singular, by adding to the nominative the termination *en*, or simply *n* when the nominative already terminates in *e*. All the other cases, both of the singular and plural, are like the genitive singular. The nouns of this division do not change their radical vowels in the plural. Examples.

*Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>der Mensch,</i>	the man.	<i>der Knabe,</i>	the boy.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>des Menschen,</i>	of the man.	<i>des Knaben,</i>	of the boy.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dem Menschen,</i>	to the man.	<i>dem Knaben</i>	to the boy.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>den Menschen,</i>	the man.	<i>den Knaben,</i>	the boy.

*Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>die Menschen,</i>	the men.	<i>die Knaben,</i>	the boys.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>der Menschen,</i>	of the men.	<i>der Knaben,</i>	of the boys.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>den Menschen,</i>	to the men.	<i>den Knaben,</i>	to the boys.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>die Menschen,</i>	the men.	<i>die Knaben,</i>	the boys.

The nouns of this division, *which always signify living beings*, are, as follows :

1. All those which terminate in the vowel *e* ; as, *der Löwe*, the lion ; *der Affe*, the ape ; and all national names with the same termination ; as, *der Deutsche*, the German ; *der Grieche*, the Greek.

2. Nouns, which originally terminated in the letter *e*, but are at present spelt without it ; as, *Ahn*, ancestor ; *Blumist*, florist ; *Falk*, falcon ; *Fink*, finch ; *Fürst*, prince ; *Gesell*, journeyman ; *Graf*, count ; *Halunke*, rascal ; *Held*, hero ; *Herr*, master ; *Hirt*, shepherd ; *Husar*, hussar ; *Insaß*,\* inhabitant ; *Lakei*,\* lackey ; *Moor*, moor ; *Narr*, fool ; *Ochse*, ox ; *Prinz*, prince ; *Schütz*, archer ; *Schranz*,\* spunger ; *Steinmeß*,\* stone-cutter ; *Thor*,

\* Seldom used.

fool; *Vorfahr*, ancestor; *Wallach*, Wallachian; and also names of nations, in *ar*, *ur*, *uf*, *ul*; as, *Tartar*, *Pandur*, *Polack*, *Heibud*, *Mongul*, and some in *er*; as, *Baier*, *Pommer*, *Kaffer*.

3. Nearly all foreign nouns ending in any consonant (except a liquid); their principal terminations are the following: *ant*, *ent*, *at*, *ot*, *uf*, *if*, *ist*, *ast*, *ost*, *ist*, *et*, *it*, *at*, *ot*, *arch*, *og*, *ag*, *aph*, *if*; as in *Protestant*, *Elephant*, *Student*, *Client*, *Philosoph*, *Theolog*, *Patriot*, *Poet*, *Cadet*, *Christ*, *Prophet*, *Monarch*, *Patriarch*, *Geograph*, *Advocat*, *Altheist*, *Katholik*, *Enthusiast*, *Phantast*, *Pilot*, *Idiot*, *Levit*, *Eremit*, *Pädagog*, *Kalif*, *Kosak*, *Basilist*. Likewise *Tyrann*, although it terminates in a liquid.—All these nouns have the accent on the last syllable. Formerly, they all terminated in *e*.

**REMARK.**—Sometimes in prose, but more frequently in poetry, those nouns of this division, which have dropped the letter *e* in the nominative, lose the termination *ent* in the dative and accusative. The nouns which more frequently allow this omission, and which in the singular are declined according to another division, will be found under § 18. 2.

### (§ 16.) SECOND DIVISION.

This division comprehends all nouns terminating in *er*, *el*, *em*, *en*. Those in *er* and *el*, take *s* in the genitive singular, and *n* in the dative plural; whilst those in *em* and *en*, take simply *s* in the genitive singular, and have all the other cases like the nominative singular; as,

#### *Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i> der Engel*	der Bürgert	der Degen.†
<i>Gen.</i> des Engels	des Bürgers	des Degens.
<i>Dat.</i> dem Engel	dem Bürger	dem Degen.
<i>Acc.</i> den Engel	den Bürger	den Degen.

#### *Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i> die Engel	die Bürger	die Degen.
<i>Gen.</i> der Engel	der Bürger	der Degen.
<i>Dat.</i> den Engeln	den Bürgern	den Degen.
<i>Acc.</i> die Engel	die Bürger	die Degen.

In the same way decline: *der Himmel*, heaven; *der Kerl*, § fellow; *der Körper*, body; *der Brunn*, fountain.

\* Angel.

† Citizen.

‡ Dagger.

§ The same as *Kerl*.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. There are some nouns, which are declined like *der Degen*, although they commonly drop their final *n* in the nominative singular. These nouns are: *Willen*, (*Wille*,) will; *Gedanken*, (*Gedanke*,) thought; *Frieden*, (*Friede*,) peace; *Funken*, (*Kunke*,) spark; *Fußstapfen*, (*Fußstapfe*,) footstep; *Glauben*, (*Glaube*,) belief; *Haufen*, (*Haufe*,) heap; *Namen*, (*Name*,) name; *Saamen*, (*Same*,) seed; *Buchstaben*, (*Buchstabe*,) letter; *Schaden*, (*Schade*,) damage. Therefore, whilst in the nominative singular we may say, *der Friede* or *der Frieden*, in the genitive singular we must say, *des Friedens*, and in the dative and all other cases, *Frieden*. The others are declined in the same manner.\* These few nouns which commonly terminate in the nominative singular in *e*, differ from the first division, not only in their genitive singular, but also by their not signifying living beings. In conformity with this characteristic difference, it is as incorrect to say, in the genitive, *Frieden* instead of *Friedens*, as it is, to say *Knaben*, instead of *Knabens*, although this distinction is sometimes improperly neglected.

2. Sometimes in poetry, but seldom in prose, a few nouns terminating in *en*, drop this termination in the nominative, dative and accusative singular; but the genitive singular is formed either from the original nominative, according to this division, or from the abbreviated nominative, according to the third division. Thus instead of *Felsen*, we also find in the nominative, dative and accusative the shorter form *Fels*; but the genitive is *Felsens* or *Felses* and not *Felsen*, as it is sometimes written.—In place of *Schmerzen*, grief, we must say in the nominative and accusative *Schmerz*; the genitive is *Schmerzes* or *Schmerzens*; dative *Schmerze* or *Schmerzen*.

3. *Käse*, cheese, also belongs to this division and is declined like *Engel*, or *Bürger*.

4. Some nouns of this division change, in the plural, their radical vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into their corresponding vowels *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. The nouns which undergo this change, are,

a. Of those which terminate in *er*: *Acker*, acre; *Bruder*, brother; *Hammer*, hammer; *Klaffer*, chatterer; *Schwager*, brother-in-law; *Vater*, father.

---

\* Instead of *Buchstaben*, we find also the shorter form *Buchstab*, which in the singular is declined according to the third division, but in the plural has *en*.

b. Of those which terminate in *el*: *Apfel*, apple; *Hammer*, wether; *Handel*, trade; *Mangel*, want; *Mantel*, cloak; *Nabel*, navel; *Nagel*, nail; *Sattel*, saddle; *Schnabel*, beak; *Vogel*, bird.

c. Of those which terminate in *en*: *Garten*, garden; *Wagen*, wagon; *Ofen*, stove; *Hafen*, harbor; *Laden*, store; *Boden*, floor; *Graben*, ditch; *Bogen*, arch; *Faden*, thread.

### (§ 17.) THIRD DIVISION.

The nouns of this division are the most numerous of all. In the singular, they take *es* in the genitive, and *e* in the dative; the accusative is like the nominative. In the plural, they terminate in *e*, except that in the dative they have *en*. With the exception of some irregularities, all masculine nouns, not belonging to the two preceding divisions, are declined according to this. Nouns of this division are principally monosyllables, either standing by themselves, or in composition with some other word. Example.

#### *Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>der Freund</i> ,	the friend.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>des Freundes</i> ,	of the friend.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dem Freunde</i> ,	to the friend.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>den Freund</i> ,	the friend.

#### *Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>die Freunde</i> ,	the friends.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>der Freunde</i> ,	of the friends.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>den Freunden</i> ,	to the friends.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>die Freunde</i> ,	the friends.

#### OBSERVATIONS.

1. For the sake of euphony, the *e* in the dative singular, is sometimes omitted; particularly, when the noun is simply preceded by a preposition; as, *bei Gott*, with God; *von Stein*, of stone: so also the *e* in the termination of the genitive, is frequently dropped; as, *des Königs*, instead of *des Königes*, of the king.

2. Nearly all primitives of this division, change, in the plural, the radical vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into the corresponding vowels *ä*, *ö*,

it, and the diphthong *au* into *äu*; as, *der Stuhl*, chair, *Nom. Plur. die Stühle*.

*Exceptions.*—*Hund*, dog; *Dolch*, dagger; *Molch*, salamander; *Hal*, eel; *Arm*, arm; *Tag*, day; *Halm*, halm; *Lachs*, salmon; *Dachs*, badger; *Laut*, sound; *Hauch*, breath; *Pfad*, path; *Huf*, hoof; *Staar*, stare; *Punkt*, point; *Docht*, wick; *Grad*, degree; *Zoll*, inch.

3. The foreign words which belong to this division, are principally those terminating in liquids; therefore all in the syllables: *an*, *on*, *in*, *al*, *ol*, *ar*, *ier* and commonly in *or*; as, *Canal*, *General*, *Admiral*, *Kapellan*, *Sultan*, *Patron*, *Rubin*, *Termin*, *Pastor*, *Akteur*, *Officier*, *Major*. These nouns commonly take simply *s* in the genitive singular and very frequently drop the final *e* in the dative. Some undergo a change of vowels in the plural; as, *Pastor*, *Plur. Pastöre*; *Canal*, *Plur. Canäle*; and so also, *General*, *Admiral*, *Kapellan*.—More particular rules of foreign nouns will be given under § 25. IV.

### (§ 18.) IRREGULARITIES.

1. There are a few nouns which are declined in the singular number, like the third division, but which take in the plural the termination *er*, and change the vowels, *a*, *o*, *u* into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. These nouns are: *Gott*, God; *Geist*, spirit; *Leib*, body; *Mann*, man; *Rand*, edge; *Ort*, place; *Wurm*, worm; *Wald*, forest; *Vormund*, guardian; *Bösewicht*, rascal; *Irrthum*, error; and others in *thum*. Example.

#### *Singular.*

#### *Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>der Ort</i> , the place	<i>die Derter</i> , the places.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>des Ortes</i> , of the place	<i>der Derter</i> , of the places.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dem Orte</i> , to the place	<i>den Dertern</i> , to the places.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>den Ort</i> , the place	<i>die Derter</i> , the places.

The others are declined in the same manner; but besides *Bösewichter*, we find also the plural form *Bösewichte*; and the compounds of *Mann*, change *Mann*, in the plural, into *Leute*; as, *der Kaufmann*, merchant, *Plur. die Kaufleute*, and so all the other compounds of *Mann*, except *Staatsmann*, statesman, *Plur. Staatsmänner*; *Ehemann*, husband, *Plur. Ehemänner*;—*Eheleute* signifies married people of both sexes.

2. There are other nouns which form the plural according to the first division, whilst their singular is declined according to the second or third; as,

*Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i>	der Mast,	the mast.	der Better,	the nephew.
<i>Gen.</i>	des Mastes,	of the mast.	des Beters,	of the nephew.
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Maste,	to the mast.	dem Better,	to the nephew.
<i>Acc.</i>	den Mast,	the mast.	den Better,	the nephew.

*Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	die Masten,	the masts.	die Bettern,	the nephews.
<i>Gen.</i>	der Masten,	of the masts.	der Bettern,	of the nephews.
<i>Dat.</i>	den Masten,	to the masts.	den Bettern,	to the nephews.
<i>Acc.</i>	die Masten,	the masts.	die Bettern,	the nephews.

The nouns which are declined in this manner, are the following:—*Har*, eagle; *Affect*, affection; *Autor*, author; *Aspect*, aspect; *Bär*, bear; *Bauer*, husbandman; *Consul*, consul; *Carolin*, carolin (a coin); *Doctor*, doctor; *Dorn*, thorn; *Flitter*, spangle; *Forst*, forest; *Gevatter*, godfather; *Ged*, fool; *Greis*, an old man; *Gau*, province; *Hader*, quarrel; *Hagestolz*,\* an old bachelor; *Impost*,\* impost; *Kapaun*, capon; *Kamerad*, companion; *Lorbeer*, laurel; *Lump*, shabby fellow; *Muskel*, muscle (of the body); *Nachbar*, neighbor; *Neger*, negro; *Pantoffel*, slipper; *Patron*, patron; *Pfau*, peacock; *Psalm*, psalm; *Professor*, professor; *Rector*, rector; *Quast*, knot; *Rubin*, ruby; *Satyr*, satyr; *See*, lake; *Schelm*, rascal; *Staat*, state; *Staar*, stare (a bird); *Schultheiß*, bailiff; *Stachel*, prickle; *Stiefel*, boot; *Spaß*, sparrow; *Schöps*, wether; *Sporn*, spur; *Strahl*, beam; *Thron*, throne; *Unterthan*, subject; *Zierrath*, ornament.

REMARK.

It is probable that most, perhaps all of the preceding nouns, originally terminated in *e*, and were, not only in the plural, but also in the singular, declined according to the first division. So even at present, the substantives, *Bär*, *Bauer*, *Gevatter*, *Kamerad*, *Nachbar*, *Psalm*, *Schultheiß*, *Schelm*, *Unterthan*, *Better*, *Greis*, *Hagestolz*, *Pfau*, *Schöps* and perhaps a few others, conformably to their original nominative, very frequently take

---

\* Very seldom.

en, (n,) in the oblique cases of the singular. Thus, for instance, we may say, in the genitive singular, either *Bauern*, or *Bauers*; and in the dative and accusative, either *Bauern* or *Bauer*.\* But on the other hand, since it has become customary to decline the singular without reference to the original nominative, it is also not uncommon to make the plural of most of the preceding nouns in conformity with the singular. Thus, *Stiefel*, *Reger*, *Better*, *Gebatter*, *Flitter*, *Stachel*, may, in the plural as in the singular, be inflected according to the second division; and *Thron*, *Mast*, *Forst*, *Ges*, *Har*, *Staar*, *Wau*, *Dorn*, *Greis*, *Schelm*, *Patron*, and several others may throughout be declined according to the third division. Of all the preceding nouns, none changes its radical vowel in the plural.

## (§ 19.) SECOND DECLENSION.

All the nouns of this declension are of the feminine gender, and have the article *die*.

### RULES.

I. In the singular, the nouns of this declension are unchangeable; as,

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>die Sonne</i> , the sun.	<i>die Mutter</i> , the mother.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>der Sonne</i> , of the sun.	<i>der Mutter</i> , of the mother.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>der Sonne</i> , to the sun.	<i>der Mutter</i> , to the mother.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>die Sonne</i> , the sun.	<i>die Mutter</i> , the mother.

### REMARKS.

*a.* Formerly, most of the feminine nouns ending in a vowel, took, in the genitive and dative singular, the termination *n*, which is still found occasionally, particularly in compounds; as, *Sonnenschein*, sunshine.

*b.* In compounds, the genitive singular of feminine nouns has sometimes the termination *s*, which was originally the characteristic of the genitive singular in all declensions. Thus we say, *das Vermählungsfest*, the feast of marriage—from *Vermählung*, *f.* and *Fest*, *n.*

---

\* The compounds of *Bauer*, as *Anbauer*, are always of the second division.

II. In the plural, most of the nouns of this declension take the termination *en* (or *n*), without changing their radical vowels, and all the cases are alike; as,

*Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i> die Schuld,	the debt.	die Zahl,	the number.
<i>Gen.</i> der Schuld,	of the debt.	der Zahl,	of the number.
<i>Dat.</i> der Schuld,	to the debt.	der Zahl,	to the number.
<i>Acc.</i> die Schuld,	the debt.	die Zahl,	the number.

*Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i> die Schulden,	the debts.	die Zahlen,	the numbers.
<i>Gen.</i> der Schulden,	of the debts.	der Zahlen,	of the numbers.
<i>Dat.</i> den Schulden,	to the debts.	den Zahlen,	to the numbers.
<i>Acc.</i> die Schulden,	the debts.	die Zahlen,	the numbers.

The nouns which are declined in this manner, are :

1. All polysyllables; as, *Freundschaft*, friendship; *Krankheit*, sickness; *Hoffnung*, hope. Except *Mutter* and *Tochter*, and nouns in *iß*, which will be mentioned below.

2. Monosyllables, terminating in a vowel, a diphthong, or a liquid; as, *Frau*, woman; *Streu*, litter; *Schaar*, troop; *Form*, form; *Zahl*, number; *Schaar*, crowd.

3. Monosyllables, terminating in a consonant, without having the radical vowels, *a*, *o*, *u*, or the diphthong *au*; as, *Zeit*, time; *Welt*, world; *Pflicht*, duty.

4. The following monosyllables, although they have the radical vowels, *a*, *o*, *u*: *Art*, manner; *Bucht*, inlet; *Fuhr* or *Fuhrt*, ford; *Fluth*, flood; *Markt*, mark; *Schuld*, debt; *Huth*, pasture; *Burg*, castle; *Fracht*, load; *Jagd*, chase; *Saat*, seed; *That*, deed; *Fahrt*, ride; *Gluth*, violent heat; *Last*, load; *Schlacht*, battle; *Post*, post.

**REMARK.**—Nouns in *e*, *er*, *el*, for the sake of euphony, take only *n* in the nominative plural, whilst those terminating in the syllable *in*, commonly take *nen*; as, *die Bibel*, bible, *Nom. Plur.* *die Bibeln*; *die Schwester*, sister, *Nom. Plur.* *die Schwestern*; *die Königin*, queen, *Nom. Plur.* *die Königinnen*.

- III. With the exception of those under II. 4. all monosyllables, terminating in any consonant, (except a liquid,) and having the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, or the diphthong *au*, take, in the nominative plural, *e*, and change, at the same time, those vowels into

ä, ö, ü, and the diphthong au into äu. So likewise all nouns in iß, take e in the *Nom. Plur.* and instead of ß, the double ff is commonly substituted. Examples :

<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>Nom.</i> die Hand*	die Maus†	die Kenntniß.‡
<i>Gen.</i> der Hand	der Maus	der Kenntniß.
<i>Dat.</i> der Hand	der Maus	der Kenntniß.
<i>Acc.</i> die Hand	die Maus	die Kenntniß.
<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Nom.</i> die Hände	die Mäuse	die Kenntnisse.
<i>Gen.</i> der Hände	der Mäuse	der Kenntnisse.
<i>Dat.</i> den Händen	den Mäusen	den Kenntnissen.
<i>Acc.</i> die Hände	die Mäuse	die Kenntnisse.

(§ 20.) IRREGULARITIES.

The nominative plural of Mutter, mother, and Tochter, daughter, is Mütter and Töchter. These are the only feminine nouns which form the nominative plural in this manner.

The plural forms, Weihnachten, christmas, and Vollmachten, authorities, are also irregular; for according to the rule of compounds, we should expect, instead of them, to find Weihnächte and Vollmächte, since the plural of the simple nouns Nacht and Macht, is Nächte and Mächte.

(§ 21.) THIRD DECLENSION.

The nouns of this declension, which are all of the neuter gender, and have the article daß, will be viewed under two divisions.

(§ 22.) FIRST DIVISION.

The nouns of this division, which are always polysyllables, terminate in er, el, en, lein, chen, or in e with the prefix ge. Those in er, el, and e, take s in the genitive singular, and n in the dative plural; whilst those in en, lein and chen, also take s in the genitive singular, but have all the other cases, both singular and plural, like the nominative singular. With the exception of Kloster, the nouns of this division never change, in

\* Hand.

† Mouse.

‡ Knowledge.

the plural, the radical vowel of the singular. — The declension of this division differs from that of the second division of the masculine gender, only in the article. Examples :

*Singular.*

*Nom.* das Fenster\* das Mittel† das Mädchen‡ das Gewölbe.§  
*Gen.* des Fensters des Mittels des Mädchens des Gewölbes.  
*Dat.* dem Fenster dem Mittel dem Mädchen dem Gewölbe.  
*Acc.* das Fenster das Mittel das Mädchen das Gewölbe.

*Plural.*

*Nom.* die Fenster die Mittel die Mädchen die Gewölbe.  
*Gen.* der Fenster der Mittel der Mädchen der Gewölbe.  
*Dat.* den Fenstern den Mitteln den Mädchen den Gewölben.  
*Acc.* die Fenster die Mittel die Mädchen die Gewölbe.

In the same manner decline: das Fräulein, lady; das Feuer, fire; das Gebäude, edifice; das Thierchen, little animal.

(§ 23.) SECOND DIVISION.

I. All the nouns, not included in the preceding division, belong to this, and take, in the genitive singular, the syllable *es*, and in the dative, *e*; the accusative is like the nominative; as,

*Singular.*

*Nom.* das Thier, the animal. das Bild, the image.  
*Gen.* des Thieres, of the animal. des Bildes, of the image.  
*Dat.* dem Thiere, to the animal. dem Bilde, to the image.  
*Acc.* das Thier, the animal. das Bild, the image.

REMARK. — The final *e* in the dative singular, particularly when the nouns are simply preceded by a preposition, and also the *e* in the termination of the genitive singular, may for the sake of euphony be omitted, as in the third division of the first declension. Thus we may say, *des Thiers*, instead of *des Thieres*; *von Gold*, instead of *von Golde*, of gold.

II. In the plural, some nouns of this division take the termination *er* in the nominative, and, at the same time, change the radical vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, and the diphthong *au* into *äu*; as,

\* Window.

† Means.

‡ Girl.

§ Vault.

*Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i>	das Buch,	the book.	das Haus,	the house.
<i>Gen.</i>	des Buches,	of the book.	des Hauses,	of the house.
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Buche,	to the book.	dem Hause,	to the house.
<i>Acc.</i>	das Buch,	the book.	das Haus,	the house.

*Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	die Bücher,	the books.	die Häuser,	the houses.
<i>Gen.</i>	der Bücher,	of the books.	der Häuser,	of the houses.
<i>Dat.</i>	den Büchern,	to the books.	den Häusern,	to the houses.
<i>Acc.</i>	die Bücher,	the books.	die Häuser,	the houses.

The nouns which are declined in this manner, are all of them monosyllables, viz :

1. All those which terminate in the liquids, *l, m, n*, and have at the same time one of the vowels *a, o, u*, or the diphthong *au*; as, *Thal*, valley; *Maul*, mouth; *Mahl*, meal; *Huhn*, chicken; *Horn*, horn; *Korn*, grain; *Lamm*, lamb; *Trumm*, lump; *Thum*, which is chiefly used in compounds; as, *Bisthum*, bishopric.

2. The rest are principally the following — all of them terminating in a consonant: *Nas*, carcass; *Amt*, office; *Bad*, bath; *Band*, ribbon; *Brett*, board; *Bild*, image; *Blatt*, leaf; *Buch*, book; *Dach*, roof; *Daus*, deuce; *Dorf*, village; *Fach*, partition; *Ei* (originally *Ej*), egg; *Faß*, barrel; *Feld*, field; *Geld*, money; *Gut*, estate; *Glas*, glass; *Glied*, member; *Grab*, grave; *Gras*, grass; *Haupt*, head; *Haus*, house; *Holz*, wood; *Hemd*, shirt; *Kalb*, calf; *Kleid*, cloth; *Kind*, child; *Kraut*, herb; *Land*, land; *Lied*, song; *Licht*, light; *Loch*, hole; *Mensch*, wench; *Nest*, nest; *Pfand*, pledge; *Rad*, wheel; *Reis*, twig; *Rind*, heifer; *Schloß*, lock; *Schild*, sign; *Schwert*, sword; *Stift*, foundation; *Tuch*, cloth; *Volk*, people; *Wams*, jacket; *Weib*, woman; *Wort*, word.

III. Other nouns of this division take *e* in the nominative plural, and, with the exception of *Floß*, float, *Plur.* *Flöße*, they do not change their radical vowels; as,

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	das Schaf,	the sheep.	die Schafe,	the sheep.
<i>Gen.</i>	des Schafes,	of the sheep.	der Schafe,	of the sheep.
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Schafe,	to the sheep.	den Schafen,	to the sheep.
<i>Acc.</i>	das Schaf,	the sheep.	die Schafe,	the sheep.

The nouns which are thus declined, are :

1. All the polysyllables, which are not included in the first division of this declension, and which are not compounds of the preceding nouns under II.; as, *das Schicksal*, fate; *das Bündniß*, alliance; *das Gedächtniß*, memory.

2. All monosyllables terminating in *l, m, n*, without having one of the vowels *a, o, u*, or the diphthong *au*; and also those terminating in *r*, or in a vowel; as, *Bein*, leg; *Beil*, hatchet; *Bier*, beer; *Fell*, skin; *Jahr*, year; *Haar*, hair; *Heer*, army; *Meer*, sea; *Paar*, pair; *Rohr*, reed; *Schwein*, swine; *Spiel*, play; *Seil*, rope; *Thier*, animal; *Thor*, gate; *Ziel*, aim; *Knie*, knee; *Lau*, rope.

3. Some other monosyllables, which cannot be included in any particular rule. They are principally: *Band*, bond; *Bot*, boat; *Brod*, bread; *Bund*, bundle; *Ding*, thing; *Erz*, ore; *Gift*, poison; *Hest*, halt; *Joch*, yoke; *Kreuz*, cross; *Loos*, lot; *Loth*, half an ounce; *Maß*, measure; *Hed*, hedge; *Net*, net; *Pferd*, horse; *Pfund*, pound; *Roh*, roe; *Recht*, right; *Reich*, reign; *Pult*, desk; *Ros*, steed; *Salz*, salt; *Schiff*, ship; *Stück*, piece; *Werk*, work; *Scheit*,\* a piece of wood; *Schild*, sign; *Sieb*, sieve.

4. Some nouns derived from foreign languages; as, *Metall*, metal; *Kameel*, camel; *Papier*, paper; *Element*, Testament, *Parlament*, *Concordat*, *Bataillon*. — More particular rules respecting foreign nouns, will be found under § 25. IV.

REMARK. — The polysyllables, *Gespens*, ghost; *Gemüth*, disposition; *Gewicht*, weight; *Gewand*, garment; *Gemach*, chamber; *Geschlecht*, sex; *Hospital*, hospital; *Regiment*, regiment; and perhaps a few others, take, in the nominative plural, *er*, but most of them also admit the termination *e*; as, *das Gewand*, *Nom. Plur. die Gewänder* or *Gewande*; *das Gemach*, *Nom. Plur. die Gemächer* or *Gemache*.

#### (§ 24.) IRREGULARITIES.

*Bett*, bed; *Hemd*, shirt; *Herz*, heart; *Leid*, pain; *Ohr*, ear; *Auge*, eye; *Ende*, end, take in the plural the termination *en*; as, *das Ohr*, *Nom. Plur. die Ohren*. But instead of *en*, *Bett* also takes *e*, and *Hemd*, *e* or *er*. In the singular number, all these nouns are declined regularly, except that *Herz* makes *Herzens* in the genitive, and *Herzen* in the dative.

---

\* Seldom used.

(§ 25.) *Supplementary Remarks on the Inflection of Common Nouns.*

I. Some nouns do not admit of a plural number; as, *das Gold*, gold; *das Silber*, silver; *die Milch*, milk; *die Butter*, butter; *der Stolz*, pride; *die Gerechtigkeit*, justice; *das Erbe*, inheritance; *das Fleisch*, flesh; *das Lob*, praise; *der Hunger*, hunger; *das Leben*, life.

II. Other nouns are used only in the plural; as, *Gebrüder*, brothers; *Geschwister*, brothers and sisters; *Gliedmaßen*, limbs; *Kosten* or *Unkosten*, expenses; *Leute*, people; *Schranken*, bounds; *Alpen*, alps; *Nachkommen*, descendants; *Einkünfte*, revenues; *Ostern*, easter; *Pfingsten*, pentecost; *Weihnachten*, christmas. The last three words, although originally adjectives of the plural number, are considered as nouns of the singular, when used in sentences; but still it seems better to use for the singular, the compounds, *das Osterfest*, *Pfingstfest*, *Weihnachtsfest*.

III. Some nouns vary in their gender, or in the formation of the plural, according to the difference of their signification; as,

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

der Band,	Bände,	volumes.
das Band,	Bänder,	ribbons.
das Band,	Bande,	bonds.
die Bank,	Bänke,	benches.
die Bank,	Banken,	banks.
der Bogen,	Bogen,	sheets of paper.
der Bogen,	Bögen,	arches.
das Ding,	Dinge,	things.
das Ding,	Dinger,	things (vague or unknown).
der Dorn,	Dornen (ore,)	thorns (as a species).
der Dorn,	Dörner,	thorns (taken separately).
der Fuß,	Füße,	feet (of animals).
der Fuß,	Fuße,	feet (in measurement).
das Gesicht,	Gesichte,	visions.
das Gesicht,	Gesichter,	faces.
das Horn,	Horne,	kinds of horn.
das Horn,	Hörner,	individual horns.
das Holz,	Hölze,	kinds of wood.
das Holz,	Hölzer,	bits of wood.
der Laden,	Laden,	shutters.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
der Laden,	Läden,	shops.
das Land,	Lande,	regions.
das Land,	Länder,	states.
das Licht,	Lichte,	candles.
das Licht,	Lichter,	lights.
das Mahl,	Mahle,	marks, times.
das Mahl,	Mähler,	meals.
die Mark,	Marken,	boundaries.
das Mark,	no plural,	marrow.
der Mann,	Männer,	men.
der Mann,	Mannen,	vassals.
der Mond,	Monden,	months.
der Mond,	Monde,	planets.
der Ort,	Orte,	places (in general).
der Ort,	Orter,	particular places.
die Sau,	Sauen,	wild boars.
die Sau,	Säue,	pigs.
der Schild,	Schilder,	shields.
das Schild,	Schilde,	sign-boards.
die Schnur,	Schnüre,	tapes.
die Schnur,	Schnuren,	daughters-in-law.
der Strauß,	Sträusse,	nosegays.
der Strauß,	Sträusse (or en),	ostriches.
das Wort,	Worte,	words (constituting a sentence).
das Wort,	Wörter,	words (as we find them in the dictionary).
der Zoll,	Zölle,	inches.
der Zoll,	Zölle,	tolls.

IV. To inflect Latin and Greek nouns according to their original declensions, is no longer customary, except in a few instances; as, *Christi Geburt*, the birth of Christ. For the present usage, the following rules are to be observed.

1. The foreign terminations of the nominative, are sometimes retained throughout the singular, particularly in words terminating in *us, is, es, um, or*. In this case, the feminine nouns remain unchangeable in the singular, but the masculine and neuter nouns take, in the genitive, *s*, unless the nominative should already terminate in this letter. The plural number takes the

termination *en*,\* which in nouns ending in *r*, is commonly added to the *Nom. Sing.*, but in other words, it is generally substituted in place of the foreign terminations. Neuter nouns, particularly those in *um*, may also take *a* in the plural number, except in the dative, which always terminates in *n* (*en*). Ex.

*Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i>	der Notarius	Doctor	die Dosis	das Thema	Verbum
<i>Gen.</i>	des Notarius	Doctors	der Dosis	des Themas	Verbums
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Notarius	Doctor	der Dosis	dem Thema	Verbum
<i>Acc.</i>	den Notarius	Doctor	die Dosis	das Thema	Verbum

*Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	die Notarien	Doctoren	die Dosen	die Themen	Verben or Verba.
<i>Gen.</i>	der Notarien	Doctoren	der Dosen	der Themen	Verben or Verba.
<i>Dat.</i>	den Notarien	Doctoren	den Dosen	den Themen	
<i>Acc.</i>	die Notarien	Doctoren	die Dosen	die Themen	Verben or Verba.

In the same manner decline: der Katechismus, die Krists, das Collegium.

2. The foreign terminations are commonly dropped or changed into other more idiomatic terminations. In this case, the masculine and feminine nouns are declined according to former rules; the neuter nouns take, in the singular, the usual terminations, and, in the plural, they commonly take *e*, unless they should belong to the first division of the third declension. Examples:

*Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i>	der Notar	Docter	die Dose	das Them.
<i>Gen.</i>	des Notars	Doctors	der Dose	des Thems.
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Notar	Docter	der Dose	dem Them.
<i>Acc.</i>	den Notar	Docter	die Dose	das Them.

*Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	die Notare	Docter	die Dosen	die Theme.
<i>Gen.</i>	der Notare	Docter	der Dosen	der Theme.
<i>Dat.</i>	den Notaren	Doctern	den Dosen	den Themen.
<i>Acc.</i>	die Notare	Docter	die Dosen	die Theme.

---

\* Unless the nominative singular should terminate in *en*.

3. French nouns of the masculine or neuter gender, when they retain the original pronunciation, receive in the plural the French termination *s*; as, *die Brigadiers, Genies, Departements*; but the plural forms, *Officiers, Majors, Cadets*, cannot be admitted. For the sake of euphony, we also say, *die Hindu's, die Boa's, Rängeruh's*, although these nouns are not French.

### B. Declension of Proper Names.

#### (§ 26.) I. Proper Names of Persons.

1. Proper nouns, preceded by an article, are indeclinable in the singular number; as,

##### *Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i> der Schiller	<i>die</i> Louise.
<i>Gen.</i> des Schiller	der Louise.
<i>Dat.</i> dem Schiller	der Louise.
<i>Acc.</i> den Schiller	<i>die</i> Louise.

2. Proper names not preceded by any article, are declined in the singular according to the following rules:

The genitive is generally formed by adding *s* to the nominative; as, *Nom.* Schiller, *Gen.* Schillers. The *s*, in the genitive, has generally an apostrophe before it, at least in nouns terminating in a vowel; as, *Dido's, Cato's*. — There are some nouns, which take, in the genitive singular, the termination *ens* (*ns*). These are:

*a.* Feminine nouns, particularly those terminating in *e*; for although others, not terminating in *e*, admit of *ens*, they rather take simply *s*; as, *Helene, Gen.* Helenens; *Maria, Gen.* Maria's or (the final *a* being changed into *e*), *Mariens*.

*b.* Masculine nouns ending in *e, s, z, ß, sch, r*; as, *Göthe, Gen.* Göthens; *Leibniz, Gen.* Leibnizens; *Boß, Gen.* Boßens. But the nouns terminating in *s, z, ß, sch*, may also drop *ens*, and simply denote the *Gen.* by an apostrophe; as, *Boß'* instead of *Boßens*; and the others may simply take *s* instead of *ens*; as, *Göthe's* instead of *Göthens*.

In the dative and accusative, the proper names may remain unaltered; and if the connexion in which they occur does not indicate the proper case, the definite article is used; or, they

may take the termination *en* (*n*); as, *Nom.* Schlegel, *Gen.* Schlegels, *Dat.* and *Acc.* Schlegel or Schlegeln. If the *Nom.* terminates in *en*, the dative and accusative are always like it.

In conversation, the dative and accusative most commonly retain the form of the nominative; but in writing, the termination *en* or *n*, is generally added, particularly by the writers of the northern part of Germany. Examples :

*Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i> Lessing	Schiller	Leibniz	Louise.
<i>Gen.</i> Lessings	Schillers	Leibnizens	Louisens.
<i>Dat.</i> Lessing ( <i>n</i> )	Schiller ( <i>n</i> )	Leibniz ( <i>n</i> )	Louise ( <i>n</i> ).
<i>Acc.</i> Lessing ( <i>n</i> )	Schiller ( <i>n</i> )	Leibniz ( <i>n</i> )	Louise ( <i>n</i> ).

3. Proper names with or without an article, are declined in the plural number, according to the following rules.

*a.* All the nouns of the feminine gender, and also those of the masculine, terminating in *e*, take *en* (*n*) in the plural.

*b.* Masculine nouns, which terminate in *er*, *el*, *em*, *en*, *lein*, or in a vowel, have the nominative plural like the nominative singular. But those in *e*, as we have stated before, also take *n*, and those in *o*, may either assume the termination *ne* or *nent*; as, *die Cantone* or *Cantonen*.

*c.* All other masculine nouns, take *e* in the nominative plural, and seldom *en*, except in poetry.

*d.* Latin nouns, terminating in one of the syllables, *as*, *es*, *is*, *os*, *us*, are unchangeable, both in the singular and plural, and if the connexion of the sentence does not indicate their case and number, the definite article or a preposition is used. Ex.

*Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i> die Louisen	Schiller	Lessinge	Leibnize.
<i>Gen.</i> der Louisen	Schiller	Lessinge	Leibnize.
<i>Dat.</i> den Louisen	Schillern	Lessingen	Leibnizen.
<i>Acc.</i> die Louisen	Schiller	Lessinge	Leibnize.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The manner of declining proper names with the article, is the same, whether the noun stands by itself, or is preceded by an adjective or pronoun. But nouns of the masculine gender, when qualified by an adjective, may also receive *s* in the genitive.

tive singular, although they are preceded by the article ; as, *des großen Karl* or *Karls*.

2. If several proper names are joined together with an article preceding them, they all remain unaltered, and the cases are indicated by the article ; as, *die Werke des Johann Gottlob Herder*, the works of John Gottlob Herder.

3. If several proper names, or a common noun and a proper name, are joined, without being preceded by an article, the last noun only is declined ; as, *Johann Valentin Meidinger's Sprachlehre*, John Valentine Meidinger's grammar ; *Kaiser Joseph's Leben*, the life of the emperor Joseph. But the common noun *Herr*, in connexion with a proper name, is declined ; as, *Herrn Webster's Reden*, the speeches of Mr. Webster.

4. If a common noun with an article precedes the proper name, the common noun is declined, whilst the name of the person remains unaltered ; as, *der Tod des Königs Ludwig*, the death of king Louis.

5. When the christian name is separated from the family name by a preposition, particularly by *von*, (which commonly denotes nobility,) the christian name alone is declined ; as, *die Gedichte Friedrichs von Schiller*, the poems of Frederick of Schiller. But if the genitive precedes the substantive, by which it is governed, the family name alone is inflected ; as, *Friedrich von Schillers Werke*.

## (§ 27.) II. Proper Names of Countries, Places, and Rivers.

1. Nearly all the names of countries and inhabited places, are of the neuter gender, and do not admit of the article, unless they should be preceded by an adjective or a common noun. They take, in the genitive singular, the termination *s*, whilst the dative and accusative are like the nominative. In the nominative plural, whenever this number is used, they have the termination *e*, unless they should, like the nouns of the first division of the third declension, have the nominative plural like the nominative singular. Examples :

### *Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Frankfurt</i>	<i>Münster.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Frankfurts</i>	<i>Münsters.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Frankfurt</i>	<i>Münster.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Frankfurt</i>	<i>Münster.</i>

*Plural.*

Frankfurte	Münster.
Frankfurte	Münster.
Frankfurten	Münstern.
Frankfurte	Münster.

2. Proper names terminating in *s*, *ß*, *z*, are indeclinable in the singular, and the genitive is denoted by the preposition *von*; as, *die Einwohner von Paris*, the inhabitants of Paris. Genitives, as *Parisen's*, *Mainzen's*, although sometimes used, are not elegant.

3. When the proper name of a place is preceded by a common noun, the latter alone is inflected, whilst the former remains unaltered. Thus in the nominative and accusative we say, *das Königreich Preußen*; in the genitive, *des Königreichs Preußen*; in the dative, *dem Königreiche Preußen*.

4. Proper names of inhabited places, of the masculine and feminine gender, which are however but rarely met with, are preceded by the definite article, and inflected like common nouns; as, *Nom. and Acc. die Schweiz*, Switzerland; *Gen. and Dat. der Schweiz*.

5. Proper names of rivers, seas, mountains, forests, and also national names, are preceded by the definite article and declined according to the rules of common nouns; as, *der Rhein*, the Rhine; *Gen. des Rheins*, &c. *Der Deutsche*, the German; *Gen. des Deutschen*, &c.

## CHAPTER IV.

### OF PRONOUNS.

There are six kinds of pronouns; viz. *personal*, *possessive*, *demonstrative*, *relative*, *interrogative*, and *indefinite*.

#### (§ 28.) I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

There are five personal pronouns; viz. *ich*, I; *du*, thou; *er*, he; *sie*, she; *es*, it; with their plurals, *wir*, we; *ihr*, you; *sie*, they.

The personal pronouns are declined as follows :

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	ich I	du thou	er he	sie she	es it
	<i>Gen.</i>	meiner of me	deiner of thee	seiner of him	ihrer of her	seiner of it
	<i>Dat.</i>	mir to me	dir to thee	ihm to him	ihr to her	ihm to it
	<i>Acc.</i>	mich me	dich thee	ihn him	sie her	es it
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	wir we	ihr you	sie they		
	<i>Gen.</i>	unser of us	euer of you	ihrer of them		
	<i>Dat.</i>	uns to us	euch to you	ihnen to them		
	<i>Acc.</i>	uns us	euch you	sie them		

#### REMARKS.

1. The personal pronouns, in the oblique cases, are also used as reflective pronouns, except that in the dative and accusative of the third person, both singular and plural, *sich* is used for the three genders; as, *ich lobe mich*, I praise myself; *du lobst dich*, thou praisest thyself; &c. Compare § 59.

2. The reflective pronouns of the plural number, are also used to denote a reciprocal relation. Thus, *sie lieben sich*, may signify, *they love themselves*, or *they love each other*. But to distinguish the reciprocal form from the reflective, the Germans also employ the adverb *einander*, one another; as, *sie lieben einander*, they love each other.

3. For the sake of emphasis, the adverb *selbst* or *selber* is frequently added to the personal pronouns, and also to substantives;

as, *ich selbst* or *selber*, I myself; *Washington selbst* or *selber*, Washington himself.

4. In poetry and in familiar language, instead of the genitives, *meiner*, *deiner*, *seiner*, *ihrer*, we also find the abbreviated forms, *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *ihr*.

## II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The possessive pronouns are either *conjunctive* or *absolute*. The conjunctive are always joined to substantives,\* whilst the absolute stand by themselves.

### (§ 29.) A. *Conjunctive Possessive Pronouns.*

The conjunctive possessive pronouns are :

<i>mein</i> , my.	<i>unser</i> , our.
<i>dein</i> , thy.	<i>euer</i> , your.
<i>sein</i> , his, its.	<i>ihr</i> , their.
<i>ihr</i> , her.	

These pronouns have been formed from the genitives of the personal pronouns, by dropping their last syllable, except *unser* and *euer*, which are the same as the corresponding genitives.

## RULES.

1. The conjunctive possessive pronouns are declined in the singular number exactly like the indefinite article : in the plural, they are declined nearly like the plural of the definite article, having the termination *e* in the nominative and accusative, *er* in the genitive, and *en* in the dative ; as,

### *Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> <i>mein</i> ,	<i>meine</i> ,	<i>mein</i> , my.
<i>Gen.</i> <i>meines</i> ,	<i>meiner</i> ,	<i>meines</i> , of my.
<i>Dat.</i> <i>meinem</i> ,	<i>meiner</i> ,	<i>meinem</i> , to my.
<i>Acc.</i> <i>meinen</i> ,	<i>meine</i> ,	<i>mein</i> , my.

\* Unless they should be used as predicates ; as, *Das Buch ist mein*, The book is mine ; but it is better to say : *Das Buch gehört mir*, The book belongs to me.

*Plural for the three genders.*

<i>Nom.</i>	meine, my.
<i>Gen.</i>	meiner, of my.
<i>Dat.</i>	meinen, to my.
<i>Acc.</i>	meine, my.

2. The other conjunctive possessive pronouns are declined in the same manner, except *unser* and *euer*, which, when increased, may be again contracted into two syllables, by dropping the *e* before *r*, or after it before any consonant except *r*; as,

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	unser,	unsre,	unser,	our.
<i>Gen.</i>	unserß,	unsrer,	unserß,	of our.
<i>Dat.</i>	unserm,	unsrer,	unserm,	to our.
<i>Acc.</i>	unsern,	unsre,	unser,	our.

*Plural for the three genders.*

<i>Nom.</i>	unsre,	our.
<i>Gen.</i>	unsrer,	of our.
<i>Dat.</i>	unsern,	to our.
<i>Acc.</i>	unsre,	our.

3. In the third person singular, there are two conjunctive possessive pronouns *sein* and *ihr*. *Sein* is used, when the possessor is of the masculine or neuter gender, and *ihr*, when the possessor is feminine. But the terminations of these and the other conjunctive pronouns, agree in gender, number, and case, with the thing possessed; as, *der Mann und seine Frau*; *die Frau und ihr Mann*; *die Mutter und ihr Sohn*; *der König mit seinen Ministern*, the king with his ministers; *die Königin mit ihrem Gefolge*, the queen with her train.

 (§ 30.) B. *Absolute Possessive Pronouns.*

There are three kinds of absolute possessive pronouns, which are used indiscriminately; viz.

<i>meiner</i> ,	<i>meine</i> ,	<i>meines</i>	or	<i>der</i> ,	<i>die</i> ,	<i>das</i>	<i>meine</i>	or	<i>meinige</i> ,	mine.
<i>deiner</i> ,	<i>deine</i> ,	<i>deines</i>	—	<i>der</i> ,	<i>die</i> ,	<i>das</i>	<i>deine</i>	—	<i>deinige</i> ,	thine.
<i>seiner</i> ,	<i>seine</i> ,	<i>seines</i>	—	<i>der</i> ,	<i>die</i> ,	<i>das</i>	<i>seine</i>	—	<i>seinige</i> ,	his, its.
<i>ihrer</i> ,	<i>ihre</i> ,	<i>ihres</i>	—	<i>der</i> ,	<i>die</i> ,	<i>das</i>	<i>ihre</i>	—	<i>ihrige</i> ,	hers.

unserer, unsere, unseres,\*or der, die, das unsere or unsrige, ours.  
 euerer, euere, eueres,† - der, die, das eure - eurige, yours.  
 ihrer, ihre, ihres - der, die, das ihre - ihrige, theirs.

RULES.‡

1. The first kind of absolute possessive pronouns take, in the different cases, the two last letters of the corresponding definite article, except that of *die*, only the vowel *e* is used, and, in the nominative and accusative of the neuter gender; the final consonant *s* has before it the vowel *e*, and not *a*, as in *das*. Ex.

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	meiner,	meine,	meines,	mine.
<i>Gen.</i>	meines,	meiner,	meines,	of mine.
<i>Dat.</i>	meinem,	meiner,	meinem,	to mine.
<i>Acc.</i>	meinen,	meine,	meines,	mine.

*Plural for the three genders.*

<i>Nom.</i>	meine,	mine.
<i>Gen.</i>	meiner,	of mine.
<i>Dat.</i>	meinen,	to mine.
<i>Acc.</i>	meine,	mine.

In the same manner decline: *diner, deine, deines*, and all others of the same kind.

2. The second and third kinds of absolute possessive pronouns, which are always preceded by the definite article, terminate throughout in *en*, except that in the nominative singular of the three genders and in the accusative of the feminine and neuter, they have *e*; as,

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	der meinige,	die meinige,	das meinige,	mine.
<i>Gen.</i>	des meinigen,	der meinigen,	des meinigen,	of mine.
<i>Dat.</i>	dem meinigen,	der meinigen,	dem meinigen,	to mine.
<i>Acc.</i>	den meinigen,	die meinige,	das meinige,	mine.

\* Or *unser, unsre, unseres*.

† Or *eurer, eure, eures*.

‡ These rules are founded on the same principle as those for the declension of adjectives. See § 40.

*Plural for the three genders.*

<i>Nom.</i> die meinigen,	mine.
<i>Gen.</i> der meinigen,	of mine.
<i>Dat.</i> den meinigen,	to mine.
<i>Acc.</i> die meinigen,	mine.

*Der, die, das meine ; der, die, das deine or deine ; &c.,* are declined in the same manner.

*Examples on the different Possessive Pronouns.*

*Dein Bruder ist fleißiger als meiner* or *der meine* or *der meinige*, Thy brother is more industrious than mine. *Meine Schwester ist aufmerksamer als deine* or *die deine* or *die deineige*, My sister is more attentive than thine. *Sein Kind ist artiger als unseres* or *das unsere* or *das unsrige*, His child is more genteel than ours. *Ich erinnere mich deiner Schwester und meiner* or *der meinen* or *der meinigen*, I remember your sister and mine. *Ich schreibe an meinen Oheim und an euren* or *den euren* or *den eurigen*, I write to my uncle and yours.

*(§ 31.) Rules respecting the Manner of Addressing Persons.*

1. In addressing one or several persons with respect, the Germans use the third person plural (*Sie*,) with its corresponding possessive pronouns ; and to show, that these pronouns are not to be taken in the meaning of the third person, but that they correspond to the English pronouns, *you, your, yours*, they are written with a capital letter ; as, *Geben Sie mir Ihr Buch*, Give (ye) me your book ; *Ich hoffe, Sie sind wohl*, I hope you are well ; *Ich danke Ihnen*, I thank you.

2. The second person singular (*du*) with its corresponding possessive pronouns, is used between the nearest relations ; as, husband and wife, brothers and sisters, parents and children, and between children in general ; and moreover between very intimate friends, particularly those who have grown up together ; and likewise in addressing God and Spiritual Beings ; and commonly in poetry ; and finally in speaking with rapture and indignation. — Hence, generally speaking, the use of the second person singular implies intimacy and familiarity.

*Examples.*—*Was willst du mein Sohn ?* What do you want, my son ? *Dir mein Gott, dir ergebe ich mich !* To thee, my God, to thee, I give myself ! *Weißt du, ob dein Vater zu Hause ist ?* Do you know whether your father is at home ?

3. If the same characteristics apply to several persons, the second person plural is used; as, *Was wollt ihr, meine Kinder?* What do you wish, my children?

4. In addressing only one person, the second person plural, with its corresponding possessive pronouns, is chiefly used among the lower classes, and in speaking to a person of inferior rank; as, *Ihr irrt euch in eurer Rechnung*, You are mistaken in your account. Formerly, however, this person was employed in speaking in a very dignified manner, and in this manner the corresponding possessive pronoun *Euer* is still used in such phrases; as, *Eure Majestät*, Your Majesty; *Eure Hoheit*, Your Highness; *Eure Gnaden*, Your Grace; &c. Accordingly it seems to be with great propriety, that in some works which refer to former centuries, the second person plural, with its corresponding possessive pronouns, is retained.

5. Formerly it was customary to address individuals of inferior rank in the third person singular; but this custom has become obsolete.

6. Instead of *Sie*, the awkward terms, *Hochdieselben*, *Höchst-dieselben*, *Allerhöchstdieselben*, &c., are used in speaking to kings and persons of noble rank.

### (§ 32.) *Historical Remarks.*

In referring to the history of literature, we observe, that the second person singular was the common mode of addressing an individual, till the eighth or ninth century. At that time, however, the German princes, ruling over France, Spain, and Italy, as they gave their edicts in the first person plural, *wére*, in return, individually addressed in the second person plural, which person had formerly been used only in speaking to several persons. This new mode of address, having become the common form among persons of higher rank, was very soon adopted by the lower classes, who are always eager to imitate the customs and manners of the higher. Thus, at the time of Charles the Fifth, the second person plural was the common form of addressing both one and several persons; and this mode of address is still retained both in French and English. In the century before the last, it became customary with the Germans and Italians, to address a person in the third person singular, and this custom still exists in several modern languages. Finally, towards the beginning of the eighteenth century, the

Germans substituted, in place of the third person singular, the third person plural, which, together with the second person singular, is now the common form of address. As the second person singular denotes a particular intimacy and familiarity, its adoption between persons who have been accustomed to address each other in the third person plural, depends frequently upon agreement; and it is sometimes, as for instance between students, preceded by some ceremony, as mutual kissing, and emptying a glass with locked arms.

### (§ 33.) III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The demonstrative pronouns are :

dieſer,	dieſe,	dieſes,	this.
jener,	jene,	jeneß,	that.
ſolcher,	ſolche,	ſolcheß,	ſuch.
ſelbiger,	ſelbige,	ſelbigeß,	the ſame.
derjenige,	diejenige,	daßjenige,	he, ſhe, it or that.
derſelbe,	dieſelbe,	daßſelbe,	the ſame.
derſelbige,	dieſelbige,	daßſelbige,	the ſame.
der,	die,	daß,	that.

### RULES.

1. The first four are declined exactly like the absolute possessive pronoun, *meiner, meine, meineß* ; as,

#### *Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	dieſer,	dieſe,	dieſeß,	this.
<i>Gen.</i>	dieſeß,	dieſer,	dieſeß,	of this.
<i>Dat.</i>	dieſem,	dieſer,	dieſem,	to this.
<i>Acc.</i>	dieſen,	dieſe,	dieſeß,	this.

#### *Plural for the three genders.*

<i>Nom.</i>	dieſe,	theſe.
<i>Gen.</i>	dieſer,	of theſe.
<i>Dat.</i>	dieſen,	to theſe.
<i>Acc.</i>	dieſe,	theſe.

2. The pronouns, *derjenige, derſelbe, derſelbige*, are declined like the absolute possessive pronoun, *der, die, daß meinige* ; as,

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	derjenige,	diejenige,	dasjenige.
<i>Gen.</i>	desjenigen,	derjenigen,	desjenigen.
<i>Dat.</i>	demjenigen,	derjenigen,	demjenigen.
<i>Acc.</i>	denjenigen,	diejenige,	dasjenige.

*Plural for the three genders.*

<i>Nom.</i>	diejenigen.
<i>Gen.</i>	derjenigen.
<i>Dat.</i>	denjenigen.
<i>Acc.</i>	diejenigen.

3. The pronoun, *der, die, daß*, when joined to a substantive, is declined like the definite article; but when it stands by itself, it is declined in the following manner:

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	der,	die,	daß.
<i>Gen.</i>	dessen (deß),	deren (der),	dessen (deß).
<i>Dat.</i>	dem,	der,	dem.
<i>Acc.</i>	den,	die,	daß.

*Plural for the three genders.*

<i>Nom.</i>	die.
<i>Gen.</i>	derer (deren).
<i>Dat.</i>	denen.
<i>Acc.</i>	die.

REMARKS.

1. The demonstrative pronoun *der* is always pronounced emphatically, but the article *der* is not.

2. The genitive *deß* is principally used in compounds; as, *deßhalb, deßwegen*, on that account. In the genitive plural, *derer* is preferred to *deren*. The old form of this case was *dero*, which sometimes may yet occur in the sublime style of writing.

3. The neuter form *dieses*, is very frequently contracted into *dies*.

4. The pronoun *derselbe* is used in preference to *selbiger*.

(§ 34.) IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The relative pronouns are :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
welcher,	welche,	welches,	} who, which, or that.
der,	die,	das,	
wer,	who,*	was,	what.

RULES.

1. *Welcher* is declined like the demonstrative pronoun *dieser* ; as, *Nom. welcher, welche, welches* ; *Gen. welches, welcher, welches* ; &c.

2. The relative pronoun *der, die, das*, does not differ in its declension from the demonstrative pronoun *der, die, das*, except that the genitive plural is *deren*, and not *derer*.

3. The relatives *wer* and *was*, which are used only in the singular, and without a noun, are declined thus :

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom. wer,</i>	<i>was.</i>
<i>Gen. wessen (wess),</i>	<i>(wess.)</i>
<i>Dat. wem,</i>	
<i>Acc. wen,</i>	<i>was.</i>

REMARKS.

1. The genitive and dative of *was*, are supplied either by the corresponding cases of the preceding relative pronouns, or by adverbial terms compounded of *wo* and a preposition ; as, *wovon*, of what ; *womit*, with what ; *wobei*, by what ; &c. Compare § 90. *b.* *Wess* is principally used in compounds ; as, *wesswegen*, why.

2. Formerly, instead of the relative pronouns, the adverb *so* was frequently used. — For the proper use of the relative pronouns, consult § 120. 9.

(§ 35.) V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The interrogative pronouns are :

<i>wer</i> , who?	<i>was</i> , what?
<i>welcher, welche, welches</i> ,	who or which?
<i>was für ein, was für eine, was für ein</i> ,	what or what sort of?

---

\* Or whosoever, or he who, she who.

RULES.

1. *Wer* and *was*, which are never joined to a substantive, are used only in the singular, and are declined exactly like the relative pronoun *wer* and *was*; as,

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> wer ?	<i>was</i> ?
<i>Gen.</i> wessen (weß) ?	(weß) ?
<i>Dat.</i> wem ?	
<i>Acc.</i> wen ?	<i>was</i> ?

The genitive and dative of *was*, are supplied by such forms, as *wobon* or *von was*, of what? *wozu* or *zu was*, to what? *womit*, with what? *wobei*, by what? &c. The genitive *weß*, is chiefly used in the compounds, *weßhab*, *weßwegen*, why?

2. The interrogative pronoun *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, is declined exactly like the demonstrative pronoun *dieser*, *diese*, *dieses*, and it is used either in connexion with a substantive, or in reference to one of several objects of the same kind; as, *Welcher Knabe that dieses*? What boy did this? *Welcher von diesen Herrn ist ihr Vater*? Which of these gentlemen is your father?

3. In *was für ein*, *eine*, *ein*, the first two words are unchangeable, and only the article *ein* is declined, and since this article is used only in the singular, we have for the plural the indeclinable form *was für*; as,

*Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> was für ein ?	<i>was für eine</i> ?	<i>was für ein</i> ?
<i>Gen.</i> was für eines ?	<i>was für einer</i> ?	<i>was für eines</i> ?
<i>Dat.</i> was für einem ?	<i>was für einer</i> ?	<i>was für einem</i> ?
<i>Acc.</i> was für einen ?	<i>was für eine</i> ?	<i>was für ein</i> ?

*Plural for the three genders.*

<i>Nom.</i> was für ?
<i>Gen.</i> was für ?
<i>Dat.</i> was für ?
<i>Acc.</i> was für ?

## REMARKS.

1. The article *ein* in *was für ein*, is sometimes omitted; as, *was für Wetter*, what sort of weather?

2. *Was für ein, eine, ein*, is used only in connexion with substantives. Without a substantive we have to say: *was für einer, eine, eines*, the genitive and dative of which are the same as before, and the accusative is, *was für einen, eine, eines*.

3. Instead of *was für*, we find sometimes also the indeclinable term *welch* used; as, *welch ein Mann*, what kind of man?

## (§ 36.) VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Indefinite pronouns are those which denote or qualify an object in a general and indefinite manner. Those terminating in the nominative singular in *er, e, es*, are declined like *dieser, diese, dieses*, under § 33.

The indefinite pronouns are:

1. *Aller, alle, alles*,\* all.

2. *Jeder, jede, jedes, jeglicher, jegliche, jegliches, jedweder, jedwede, jedwehes*, } every one.

*Jeder*, however, is preferred to *jeglicher* and *jedweder*.

3. *Einiger, einige, einigeß*, some, or any.

*Etllicher, etliche, etliches*, some.

*Mancher, manche, mancheß*, many a one.

4. In connexion with substantives, we use the words, *ein, eine, ein*, one; *solch ein, solch eine, solch ein*, such a one; *kein, keine, kein*, no one. They are declined like the conjunctive possessive pronouns under § 29. But, without a substantive, we use the forms: *einer, eine, eines*; *keiner, keine, keines*; *solch einer, eine, eines*; *einer, eine, eines von beiden*, either; *keiner, keine, keines von beiden*, neither.

5. *Beide*, both, is declined like the plural of *dieser*. See § 33. In the singular only the neuter gender is used; as, *Nom. Gen. and Acc. beides*; *Dat. beidem*.

6. *Viel*, much; *wenig*, little; *mehr*, more, most commonly remain unchangeable in the singular, when no article or pronoun precedes; as, *viel Geld*, much money; *wenig*

---

\* *Alles* sometimes drops its termination, particularly when it is followed by a possessive pronoun; as, *all mein Geld*, all my money.

**Freude**, little pleasure; **mehr Leiden**, more sufferings; but sometimes they are declined; as, **viele Freude, wenig Geld**.

7. **Sämmtlicher, sämmtliche, sämmtliches, } altogether.**  
**Gesamnter, gesammte, gesammtes,**
8. **Man**, one, corresponding to the French *on*; **etwas**, something; **genug**, enough; **nichts**, nothing, are all unchangeable.
9. The indefinite pronouns, **jemand**, some or any body; **niemand**, nobody; **jedermann**, every one, are used only in the singular; as,

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>niemand,</b>	<b>jemand,</b>	<b>jedermann.</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>niemandes or niemandes,</b>	<b>jemandes (or es),</b>	<b>jedermanns.</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>niemand or niemadem,</b>	<b>jemand (em),</b>	<b>jedermann.</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>niemand or niemanden,</b>	<b>jemand (en),</b>	<b>jedermann.</b>

(§ 37.) REMARKS.

1. Indefinite pronouns preceded by the definite article, are declined exactly like **derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige**; as, *Nom.* **der andre, die andre, das andre**; *Gen.* **des andren, der andren, des andren**; &c.

2. Indefinite pronouns, preceded by the indefinite article, or by conjunctive possessive pronouns, or by **kein** or **viel**, are declined as follows:

<i>N.</i>	<b>mein andrer,</b>	<b>meine andre,</b>	<b>mein andres,</b>	<b>my other.</b>
<i>G.</i>	<b>meines andren,</b>	<b>meiner andren,</b>	<b>meines andren,</b>	<b>of my other.</b>
<i>D.</i>	<b>meinem andren,</b>	<b>meiner andren,</b>	<b>meinem andren,</b>	<b>to my other.</b>
<i>A.</i>	<b>meinen andren,</b>	<b>meine andre,</b>	<b>mein andres,</b>	<b>my other.</b>

*Plural for the three genders.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>meine andren,</b>	<b>my others.</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>meiner andren,</b>	<b>of my others.</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>meinen andren,</b>	<b>to my others.</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>meine andren,</b>	<b>my others.</b>

Thus decline: **ein einziger, eine einzige, ein einziges**, an only one; **ein jeder, eine jede, ein jedes**; **ein solcher, eine solche, ein solches**.

## CHAPTER V.

## OF ADJECTIVES.\*

We shall view adjectives in the positive, comparative, and superlative degrees, and we will consider them, first, in their absolute, and then, in their declinable form.

 (§ 38.) A. *Absolute Form.*

I. The absolute form of adjectives in the positive degree, is that which we find in the dictionary ; as, **gut**, good ; **kalt**, cold. This form is used :

*a.* When the adjective is neither preceded by an article or pronoun, nor followed by a substantive expressed or understood. Hence, without reference to gender, number or case, we say : **Der Vater ist gut**, The father is good ; **Die Mutter ist gut**, The mother is good ; **Die Kinder sind gut**, The children are good ; **Ich fand ihn sehr krank**, I found him very sick.

*b.* Adverbially ; as, **Sie singt schön**, She sings beautifully.

II. The absolute forms of the comparative and superlative degrees, are obtained by adding to the absolute form of the positive, **er** for the comparative, and, according to euphony, **est** or **st** for the superlative, and by changing, in most primitives, the radical vowels **a**, **o**, **u** into the corresponding vowels **ä**, **ö**, **ü** ; as,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
<b>kalt</b> , cold ;	<b>kälter</b> ;	<b>kältest</b> .
<b>warm</b> , warm ;	<b>wärmer</b> ;	<b>wärmest</b> .
<b>lang</b> , long ;	<b>länger</b> ;	<b>längst</b> .

## REMARKS.

1. When the absolute form of the positive terminates in the vowel **e**, the comparative is formed by adding simply **r**, and the superlative by adding **st** ; as, **weise**, wise ; **weiser**, wiser ; **weisest**, wisest.

2. Adjectives terminating in **er**, **el**, **en**, drop the vowel **e** of

---

\* Including also the participles.

these syllables in the comparative; but they retain it in the superlative, and add only *st*; as,

<i>Positive.</i>		<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
edel,	noble;	edler,	edelst.
eben,	plain;	ebner,	ebenst.
vollkommen,	perfect;	vollkommener,	vollkommenst.

3. The radical vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, which, in the comparative and superlative degrees of most primitives, are changed into the corresponding vowels *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, remain unchanged in the following words: *Blas*, pale; *blond*, fair; *bunt*, variegated; *fahl*, fallow; *falsch*, false; *fröh*, glad; *gerade*, straight; *hohl*, hollow; *hold*, affectionate; *kahl*, bald; *karg*, stingy; *knapp*, narrow; *lahm*, lame; *loß*, loose; *matt*, feeble; *morsch*, musty; *nackt*, naked; *platt*, flat; *plump*, clumsy; *roh*, raw; *rund*, round; *sacht*, slow; *sant*, soft; *satt*, satiated; *schlaff*, slack; *schlan*, slender; *starr*, stiff; *stolz*, proud; *straff*, tight; *stumpf*, dull; *tapfer*, brave; *toll*, mad; *voll*, full; *zäh*, tame. The diphthong *au* always remains unchanged; as, *blau*, blue; *blauer*, bluer; *blau*est, bluest. So likewise, derivatives never change their vowels; as, *herzhast*, courageous; *herzhafter*, more courageous; *herzhaftest*, most courageous.

4. The following adjectives form their degrees of comparison irregularly:

<i>Positive.</i>		<i>Comparative.</i>		<i>Superlative.</i>	
gut,	good;	besser,	better;	best,	best.
viel,	much;	mehr,	more;	meist,	most.
wenig,	little;	minder,*	less;	mindest,*	least.

Instead of *größest*, greatest, we commonly say *größt*. The letter *h* in *nahe*, is changed, in the superlative degree, into *ch*; and *ch* in *hoch*, is changed, in the comparative, into *h*; as,

nahe,	near;	näher,	nearer;	nächst,	nearest or next.
hoch,	high;	höher,	higher;	höchst,	highest.

III. The absolute form of the comparative degree, is used like the absolute form of the positive; as, *Mein Bruder schreibt besser als meine Schwester*, My brother writes better than my sister; *Ich fand ihn heute kränker als gestern*, I found him sicker to-day than yesterday.

\* Or regular.

IV. The absolute form of the superlative degree is very seldom used ; most commonly it is preceded by the definite article, and takes the terminations of the second declension of adjectives ; as, *Er ist der Jüngste*, He is the youngest.

An adverb of the superlative degree is formed by placing *am* before its absolute form, and by adding the termination *en* to it ; as, *am besten*, the best.—Instead of *am*, the preposition *zu* or *auf* is sometimes used, the first of which, governing the dative, is contracted with the article *dem* into *zum* ; and the latter governing the accusative, is contracted with *daß* into *aufß* ; as, *zum wenigsten*, the least ; *aufß beste*, the best.

(§ 39.) OBSERVATIONS.

1. When we employ an adjective in the positive degree to make a comparison of equality, the particles *so*—*als* are used ; as, *Er ist so reich, als sein Bruder*, He is as rich as his brother. Before *so*, the adverb *eben* or *gerade*, exactly, is frequently inserted ; as, *Er ist so alt or gerade so alt, als ich*, He is exactly as old as I.

2. But if it be only a comparison of similarity, the adverb *wie* must be used ; as, *Er ist reich wie Krösus*, He is as rich as Croesus.

3. When, in making a comparison, we employ an adjective of the comparative degree, the particle *als* must be used ; as, *Sie ist geschickter, als ihre Schwester*, She is more skilful than her sister.

4. Formerly, the particle *denn* was frequently substituted in place of *als*, than. This is also sometimes done at present, particularly when *als* occurs twice in close succession ; as, *Napoleon war größer als Krieger, denn als Mensch* (and not, *als als Mensch*), Napoleon was greater as a warrior than as a man.

5. The English particles, *the*—*the*, before the comparative degree, are expressed in German by *je*—*desto* ; as, the richer, the more proud, *je reicher, desto stolzer*.

6. In comparing two adjectives, instead of the comparative form of the adjective itself, the adverbs *mehr*, more ; *minder* or *weniger*, less, are to be used ; as, *Sie ist weniger klug, als listig*, She is less prudent than cunning.

7. An eminent degree of equality is denoted by placing before the adjective of the positive degree certain adverbs, such as,

sehr or gar, very; äußerst, extremely; ungemein, uncommonly; höchst, most; besonders, particularly; außerordentlich, extraordinarily; unvergleichlich, incomparably.

### B. Declension of Adjectives.

(§ 40.) *General Principle.*—In German adjectives, the genders as well as the cases are always indicated by the terminations of the definite article. These terminations must be joined to the absolute form of the adjective, unless they should be found in preceding qualifying terms; in this latter case, the adjective, for the sake of euphony, takes *en* throughout; except that in the singular, the nominative of all three genders, and the accusative of the feminine and neuter, take *e*. This is the principle on which the three following declensions of adjectives, as well as the declension of most adjective pronouns and declinable numbers, are founded.

#### (§ 41.) FIRST DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the different degrees, not preceded by an article or pronoun, but followed by a substantive, assume, in the different cases, the two last letters of the corresponding definite article, except that of *die*, only the vowel *e* is used, and that in the nominative and accusative of the neuter gender, the final consonant *s*, has the vowel *e* and not *a* before it. Hence, the adjectives of this declension are inflected exactly like *meiner*, *meine*, *meines*. See § 30. Rule 1.

REMARK.—In the genitive singular of this declension, we may, for the sake of euphony, use *en* instead of *es*. Example:

#### *Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> guter Vater,	gute Mutter,	gutes Kind.
<i>Gen.</i> gutes (en) Vaters,	guter Mutter,	gutes (en) Kindes.
<i>Dat.</i> gutem Vater,	guter Mutter,	gutem Kinde.
<i>Acc.</i> guten Vater,	gute Mutter,	gutes Kind.

#### *Plural for the three genders.*

<i>Nom.</i> gute Väter,	Mütter	Kinder.
<i>Gen.</i> guter Väter,	Mütter,	Kinder.
<i>Dat.</i> guten Vätern,	Müttern,	Kindern.
<i>Acc.</i> gute Väter,	Mütter,	Kinder.

In like manner decline :

besserer Vater, bessere Mutter, besseres Kind.  
 bester Vater, beste Mutter, bestes Kind.

(§ 42.) SECOND DECLENSION.

When adjectives of the different degrees are preceded by the definite article, or by a pronoun declined like the definite article, or compounded with it,\* then, according to our principle, they are not in need of the terminations of the preceding declension ; but, for the sake of euphony, they take, throughout, the termination *en*, except that in the nominative singular of all three genders, and in the accusative of the feminine and neuter gender, they have *e*. Hence, the adjectives of this declension are inflected like the pronouns preceded by the definite article. See § 30. Rule 2. Example :

*Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> der gute,	die gute,	das gute,
<i>Gen.</i> des guten,	der guten,	des guten,
<i>Dat.</i> dem guten,	der guten,	dem guten,
<i>Acc.</i> den guten,	die gute,	das gute.

*Plural for the three genders.*

*Nom.* die guten.  
*Gen.* der guten.  
*Dat.* den guten.  
*Acc.* die guten.

Decline :

der bessere Vater, die bessere Mutter, das bessere Kind.  
 der beste Vater, die beste Mutter, das beste Kind.  
 jener schöne Soldat, jene schöne Dame, jenes schöne Buch.  
 derselbe große König, dieselbe große Königin, dasselbe große Haus.

(§ 43.) THIRD DECLENSION.

Adjectives, preceded by conjunctive possessive pronouns, or by the personal pronouns, *ich*, *du*, *wir*, *ihr*, (*Sie*, and *Er*, in

\* Such as *dieser*, *jener*, *welcher*, *jedweder*, *derselbe*, *derjenige*, *ein jeder*, &c.

addressing a person,)\* or by *sein*, *no one*, or, in the singular, by the indefinite article, differ from the preceding declension only by taking, in the nominative singular of the masculine gender, the termination *er*, and in the nominative and accusative singular of the neuter gender, the syllable *es*. In these cases, the adjective must assume the terminations of the definite article, according to our general principle, because they are not found in the preceding qualifying terms. Hence, this third declension coincides with the first, in those cases in which the qualifying terms before the adjective have not the termination of the definite article. See § 37. 2. Example :

*Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> mein guter,	meine gute,	mein gutes.
<i>Gen.</i> meines guten,	meiner guten,	meines guten.
<i>Dat.</i> meinem guten,	meiner guten,	meinem guten.
<i>Acc.</i> meinen guten,	meine gute,	mein gutes.

*Plural for the three genders.*

<i>Nom.</i> meine guten.
<i>Gen.</i> meiner guten.
<i>Dat.</i> meinen guten.
<i>Acc.</i> meine guten.

*Decline :*

mein besserer Vater,	meine bessere Mutter,	mein besseres Kind.
mein bester Vater,	meine beste Mutter,	mein bestes Kind.
du treuer Freund,	du treue Freundin,	du treues Mädchen.
ein guter Mann,	eine gute Frau,	ein gutes Kind.

As in the plural there is no indefinite article, adjectives preceded by it in the singular, fall, of course, under the first declension, in the plural.

The table on the following page represents the terminations which are to be added to the absolute form of adjectives.

---

\* The genitive of these personal pronouns never occurs in connection with an adjective. Should this kind of genitive occur in English, we rather use in German the preposition *von* with the dative.

**Absolute form of**  
 adjectives in the positive, comparative, and superlative degrees; as,  
 wárm, warm;  
 wármét, warmer;  
 wármest, warmest.

**FIRST DECLENSION.**  
 Terminations added to the absolute form of adjectives in their different degrees, when they are not preceded by any article or pronoun, but simply followed by substantives.

**SECOND DECLENSION.**  
 Terminations added to the absolute form of adjectives in their different degrees, when they are preceded by the definite article, or by pronouns declined like the definite article, or compounded with it.

**THIRD DECLENSION.**  
 Terminations added to the absolute form of adjectives in their different degrees, when they are preceded by possessive or personal pronouns, or by fétt, or in the singular by the indefinite article.

<i>Singular.</i>							
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>
	et	e	eð	e	e	e	et
<i>Gen.</i>	eð or en	et	eð or en	en	en	en	en
<i>Dat.</i>	en	et	en	en	en	en	en
<i>Acc.</i>	en	-e	eð	en	e	e	en
				<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>		e		en	en	en	en
<i>Gen.</i>		et		en	en	en	en
<i>Dat.</i>		en		en	en	en	en
<i>Acc.</i>		e		en	en	en	en

(§ 44.) OBSERVATIONS.

1. After indeclinable terms, adjectives are inflected as they would be without them; as, *hundert baare Thaler*, a hundred dollars in cash; *sehr viele Menschen*, a great many persons; *etwas guter Wein*, some good wine; *mehr schlechtes Wetter*, more bad weather.

Before an adjective, the indefinite pronouns *viel*, *wenig*, *manch*, *sold*, *welch*, are either declined in the singular number, as under § 36; or they remain indeclinable: \* accordingly the declension of the adjective varies; as, *mancher gute Mann*, *manche gute Frau*, *manches gute Kind*; or, *manch guter Mann*, *manch gute Frau*, *manch gutes Kind*.

2. When, in the second and third declensions, several adjectives in succession are joined to the same substantive, they are declined as each of them would be if it stood alone; as, *Nom. der gute rothe Wein*; *Gen. des guten rothen Weines*; &c. *Nom. Ein schöner, großer, freier Garten*; *Gen. eines schönen, großen, freien Gartens*; &c.

3. When a noun is preceded by several adjectives, which, according to former rules, would come under the first declension, the first of them is inflected according to the first declension, and the others either according to the first or third, as euphony requires; but in the genitive singular of the masculine and neuter genders, they always take *en*; as,

*Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. guter lieber Vater, gute liebe Mutter, gutes liebes Kind.</i>		
<i>G. gutes lieben Vaters, guter lieber Mutter, gutes lieben Kindes.</i>		
(en)	(en)	(en)
<i>D. gutem liebem Vater, guter lieber Mutter, gutem liebem Kinde.</i>		
(en)	(en)	(en)
<i>A. guten lieben Vater, gute liebe Mutter, gutes liebes Kind.</i>		

*Plural for the three genders.*

<i>Nom. gute liebe (en) Väter,</i>	<i>Mütter,</i>	<i>Kinder.</i>
<i>Gen. guter lieber (en) Väter,</i>	<i>Mütter,</i>	<i>Kinder.</i>
<i>Dat. guten lieben Vätern,</i>	<i>Müttern,</i>	<i>Kindern.</i>
<i>Acc. gute liebe (en) Väter,</i>	<i>Mütter,</i>	<i>Kinder.</i>

\* Sometimes they also remain indeclinable in the plural.

4. Adjectives preceded in the plural by the indefinite pronouns *alle, feine, wenige, viele, mehrere, manche, welche,\** may also, like the second adjective under the preceding number, be inflected either according to the first or third declension; commonly, however, after *alle* and *feine*, they are declined according to the third, and after the others, rather according to the first declension.

5. In familiar language, when two adjectives of the same termination are joined by means of the particle *und*, it is not uncommon to drop the termination of the first; as, *ein arbeitsam und tugendhafter Mensch*, an industrious and virtuous man; *ein neu und köstliches Buch*, a new and costly book.

6. In the nominative and accusative of the neuter gender, the adjective very frequently drops the termination *es*; as, *kalt Wasser*.

7. When an adjective is preceded by different qualifying terms, it depends upon the last for its termination; as, *dieser mein guter Bruder*.

8. One adjective employed adverbially to qualify another, is used in its absolute form; as, *ein höchst warmes Wetter*.

9. Adjectives, which in their primitive forms end in *er, el, en*, drop the vowel of these syllables, when new terminations are added; as, *Nom. edel, eble, edles*; *Gen. edles, &c.*

10. Adjectives, as presented in the different declensions, may be used as nouns, and then they are written with a capital letter. Adjectives of the masculine and feminine gender may be used substantively, both in the singular and plural; but those of the neuter gender, only in the singular; as, *Bester*, best friend; *Beste*, best lady; *der Weise*, the wise man; *unsere Verwandten und Bekannten*, our relations and acquaintances; *mein Geliebter*, my beloved friend; *berühmte Gelehrte*, distinguished learned men; *das Böse*, the evil; *Böses*, any thing evil; *viel Gutes* or *vieles Gute*, much good.

Sometimes the simple absolute form of an adjective is used as a neuter noun; as, *Gelb und Roth sind zwei Grundfarben*, Yellow and red are two principal colours.

---

\* Signifying "some," and not to be confounded with the relative pronoun *welcher, welche, welches*.

# CHAPTER VI.

## OF NUMERALS.

### (§ 45.) I. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

1, ein or eins.	23, drei und zwanzig.
2, zwei.	24, vier und zwanzig, &c.
3, drei.	30, dreißig.
4, vier.	31, ein und dreißig.
5, fünf.	32, zwei und dreißig, &c.
6, sechs.	40, vierzig.
7, sieben.	50, fünfzig.
8, acht.	60, sechzig.
9, neun.	70, siebenzig or siebzig.
10, zehn.	80, achtzig.
11, elf or eilf.	90, neunzig.
12, zwölf.	100, hundert.
13, dreizehn.	101, hundert und ein or eins.
14, vierzehn.	102, hundert und zwei.
15, fünfzehn.	200, zwei hundert.
16, sechzehn or sechzehn.	300, drei hundert.
17, siebenzehn or siebzehn.	400, vier hundert.
18, achtzehn.	1000, tausend.
19, neunzehn.	10000, zehntausend.
20, zwanzig.	100000, hundert tausend.
21, ein und zwanzig.	1000000, eine Million.
22, zwei und zwanzig.	10000000, zehn Millionen.
1840, ein tausend acht hundert und vierzig.	

### (§ 46.) OBSERVATIONS.

1. The number *ein*, is declined according to the following rules :

- a. When *ein*, without having an article or pronoun before it, is followed by a substantive, it is declined like the indefinite article ; as, *ein Mann, eine\* Frau, ein Kind*.
- b. When *ein* is preceded by the definite article or by a pronoun, it is declined like an adjective preceded by the same terms ; as,

---

\* We say in German, "*ein Uhr*, one o'clock," although *Uhr* is of the feminine gender. *Eine Uhr* signifies a watch.

*Nom.* der eine, die eine, das eine ; *Gen.* des einen, &c.

— dieser eine, diese eine, dieses eine ; *Gen.* dieses einen, &c.

— mein einer, meine eine, mein eines ; *Gen.* meines einen, &c.

- c. *Ein*, not preceded by an article or pronoun, nor followed by a substantive, is declined according to the first declension of adjectives ; as, *Nom.* einer, eine, eines ; *Gen.* eines, &c. *Kein Mensch war da, auch nicht einer*, No person was there, not even one. *Eins* corresponds to the English, "One thing ;" as, *Eins ist nothwendig*, One thing is necessary.

2. *Zwei* and *drei*, preceded by the definite article or by a pronoun, are indeclinable ; but without these terms, they assume, in the genitive, the termination *er*, and in the dative, *en* ; as, *zweier Brüder Erbtheil*, the inheritance of two brothers ; *mit zweien gehen*, to go with two ; *Niemand kann zweien Herrn dienen*, No one can serve two masters. — But the termination *en* is commonly omitted in the dative, if this case be sufficiently indicated by the context ; as, *Ich sagte es nur zu drei Personen*, I mentioned it only to three persons.

3. The numbers *ein*, *zwei*, *drei*, vary according to the preceding rules, when they stand alone, or when, in compounds, they stand last ; but when they precede other numbers, they are unchangeable ; as, *Es kostet einen Thaler*, It costs one dollar ; *Es kostet hundert und einen Thaler* ; *Es kostet ein und zwanzig Thaler*.

4. The number *zwei*, which, in modern German, has in each case but one form for the three genders, was formerly declined as follows :

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>zween</i> ,	<i>zwo</i> ,	<i>zwei</i> .
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>zweener</i> ,	<i>zwoer</i> ,	<i>zweier</i> .
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>zweenen</i> ,	<i>zwoen</i> ,	<i>zweien</i> .
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>zween</i> ,	<i>zwo</i> ,	<i>zwei</i> .

These forms are still sometimes found in poetry.

5. The other cardinal numbers, when followed by a substantive, are indeclinable ; as, *sechs Thaler*. When the substantive is not expressed, but merely referred to, the simple numbers, and, in compounds, only the last number, may take, in the nominative and accusative, the termination *e* ; in the genitive,

er;\* and in the dative, en;† as, *Biere sind todt, und sechs leben noch*, Four are dead, and six are yet alive. *Mit Sechsen fahren*, or *mit sechs Pferden fahren*, to ride with six horses.

(§ 47.) II. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

With the exception of *erste*, *dritte*, and *achte*, the ordinal numbers preceding *zwanzigste*, are formed from the cardinal, by adding *te*; and all others (except *zwanzigste*,) by adding *ste*.

1st, <i>der erste</i> .	19th, <i>der neunzehnte</i> .
2d, <i>zweite</i> .	20th, <i>zwanzigste</i> .
3d, <i>dritte</i> .	21st, <i>ein und zwanzigste</i> .
4th, <i>vierte</i> .	22d, <i>zwei und zwanzigste</i> .
5th, <i>fünfte</i> .	23d, <i>drei und zwanzigste</i> .
6th, <i>sechste</i> .	24th, <i>vier und zwanzigste, &amp;c.</i>
7th, <i>siebente</i> .	30th, <i>dreißigste</i> .
8th, <i>achte</i> .	40th, <i>vierzigste</i> .
9th, <i>neunte</i> .	50th, <i>fünfzigste</i> .
10th, <i>zehnte</i> .	60th, <i>sechzigste</i> .
11th, <i>elfte or eilfte</i> .	70th, <i>siebenzigste or siebzigste</i> .
12th, <i>zwölfte</i> .	80th, <i>achtzigste</i> .
13th, <i>dreizehnte</i> .	90th, <i>neunzigste</i> .
14th, <i>vierzehnte</i> .	100th, <i>hundertste</i> .
15th, <i>fünfzehnte</i> .	200th, <i>zwei hundertste</i> .
16th, <i>sechzehnte</i> .	300th, <i>drei hundertste</i> .
17th, <i>siebenzehnte or</i> <i>siebzehnte</i> .	400th, <i>vier hundertste</i> .
18th, <i>achtzehnte</i> .	1000th, <i>tausendste</i> .
	10000th, <i>zehn tausendste</i> .

(§ 48.) OBSERVATIONS.

1. The ordinal numbers are declined according to the three declensions of adjectives; as,

*Nom.* *der erste, die erste, das erste*; *Gen.* *des ersten, &c.*  
 — *mein erster, meine erste, mein erstes*; *Gen.* *meines ersten, &c.*  
 — *erster, erste, erstes*; *Gen.* *erstes or ersten, &c.*

2. Of compound numbers, only the last assumes the form of an ordinal, and admits of declension; whilst the preceding are

\* But commonly, the relation of this case is expressed by *von*; as, *fünf von zwanzig*, five of twenty.

† This termination occurs more frequently than the others.

cardinals, and remain unchanged; as, *im ein hundert acht und zwanzigsten Jahre nach Christi Geburt.*

3. *Der erste* admits the comparative *der erstere*, the former, which is commonly used in connexion with *der letztere*, the latter.

(§ 49.) III. COMPOUNDS FORMED FROM CARDINAL NUMBERS.

1. By joining the word *Mal* to cardinal numbers, we form compounds expressing a repetition; as,

<i>einmal,</i>	once.	<i>viermal,</i>	four times.
<i>zweimal,</i>	twice.	<i>fünfmal,</i>	five times.
<i>dreimal,</i>	thrice.	<i>sechsmal,</i>	&c.

These terms are unchangeable. They are converted into adjectives, by adding the syllable *ig*; as, *einmalig, zweimalig.*

2. By adding *erlei*, we form compounds denoting a variety; as,

<i>einerlei,</i>	of one sort.
<i>zweierlei,</i>	of two sorts.
<i>dreierlei,</i>	&c.

So likewise we say: *keinerlei*, of no sort; *mancherlei*, of different sorts; *vielerlei*, of many sorts; *allerlei*, of all sorts. These compounds too are indeclinable.

3. By adding *fach* or *fältig*, multiplying terms are formed; as,

<i>einfach</i> or <i>einfältig,</i>	single.
<i>zweifach</i> or <i>zweifältig,</i>	double.
<i>dreifach</i> or <i>dreifältig,</i>	triple.
<i>vierfach</i> or <i>vierfältig,</i>	&c.

These terms are adjectives, and declined as such; as, *die dreifache Krone*, the triple crown; *ein einfacher Faden*, a single thread. The numbers compounded with *fach*, are more common than those combined with *fältig*.

4. Half hours are denoted by placing *halb* before the cardinal numbers; as,

<i>halb ein</i> or <i>eins,</i>	half past twelve.	<i>halb vier,</i>	half past three.
<i>halb zwei,</i>	half past one.	<i>halb fünf,</i>	half past four.
<i>halb drei,</i>	half past two.	<i>halb sechs,</i>	&c.

5. Distributive numbers are: *eins und eins*, one by one, or *je eins und eins*, one at a time; *zwei und zwei*, two and two, or *je zwei*, two at a time; *drei und drei*, three and three, or *je drei*, three at a time; &c.

Also the dative with *zu* is employed; as, *zu zweien*, two together; *zu dreien*, three together; *zu vieren*, &c.

The following expressions must also be observed: *Paarweise* or *Paar und Paar*, by pairs; *dußendweise*, by dozens; *hundertweise*, by hundreds; *millionenweise*, by millions; *zwei Mann hoch*, two men abreast; *drei Mann hoch*, three men abreast.

(§ 50.) IV. COMPOUNDS FORMED FROM ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1. By joining the letter *I* to ordinal numbers, we obtain fractional numbers; as,

<i>ein Drittel</i> ,	one third.
<i>ein Viertel</i> ,	one fourth.
<i>ein Fünftel</i> ,	&c.

These numbers are properly compounds of the ordinals and the substantive *Theil*; and we still find the forms, *das Drittheil*, *Viertheil*, *Fünftheil*, &c. It is to be observed, that these compounds are of the neuter gender, although *Theil* is masculine.

2. By joining the substantive *Mal*, we form compounds denoting a repetition; as,

<i>das erstemal</i> ,	the first time.
<i>das zweitemal</i> ,	the second time.
<i>das drittemal</i> ,	the third time.
<i>das viertemal</i> ,	&c.

OBSERVATIONS.

*a.* The word *Mal*, an obsolete noun of the neuter gender, may also be written separately with a capital letter, and is declined regularly; as, *Nom. das erste Mal*; *Gen. des ersten Males*; &c.

*b.* Instead of *das erste Mal*, *das zweite Mal*, &c., we may say: *zum ersten Male*, or *für's erste Mal*; *zum zweiten Male*; &c.

*c.* By joining the syllables *malig* to the absolute form of the ordinal numbers, we form adjectives; as, *erstmalig*, *zweimalig*, &c.

d. The following compounds deserve notice; *diesesmal*, this time; *jenesmal*, that time; *vielmal*, many times; *manchmal*, many a time; *mehrmal* or *mehrmalen*, several times; *oftmal*, oftentimes; *ein einziges mal*, only once; *kein einziges mal*, not even once; *ein andermal*, another time; *wie vielmal*, how often; *keimmal*, no time; *niemals*, never.

3. In speaking of halves, the word *halb* is annexed to the ordinals; as,

*anderthalb* (and not *zweitehalb*), one and a half; *dritterhalb*, two and a half; *viertelhalb*, three and a half; *fünfterhalb*, four and a half; *sechsterhalb*, five and a half; *siebentelhalb* or *siebtehalb*, six and a half; *achtehalb*, seven and a half; *neuntehalb*, eight and a half; *zehntelhalb*, nine and a half; *elftehalb*, ten and a half; *zwölftelhalb*, eleven and a half.

These compounds are also indeclinable. Twelve and a half, thirteen and a half, &c., are expressed in German by joining *halb* to the cardinal numbers by the conjunction *und*, and declining it like an adjective; as, *Ich gab ihm zwölf und einen halben Thaler*, I gave him twelve and a half dollars.

4. Adverbs of order are formed by adding *ns* to the ordinal numbers; as,

<i>erstens</i> ,	firstly.
<i>zweitens</i> ,	secondly.
<i>drittens</i> ,	thirdly.
<i>viertens</i> ,	&c.

5. Expressions like the following, are sometimes met with: *Selbvierter gehen*, to go as the fourth with three; *selbdreizehnter gehen*, to go as the thirteenth with twelve.

### (§ 51.) *Final Remarks.*

a. The names of cardinal numbers are of the feminine gender, because the noun *Zahl*, *f.* or *Ziffer*, *f.* is understood; hence we say: *die Eins*, *die Zwei*, *die Drei*, &c.

b. To enumerate decimal numbers, we say: *die Einheit* or *der Einer*, *der Zehner*, *der Hunderter*, *der Tausende*.

c. Collective numbers are: *die Hälfte*, the half; *das Paar*, a pair or couple, a few; *das Duzend*, a dozen; *ein halbes* (or *halb*) *Duzend*, half a dozen; *das Schock*, three score or sixty; *die Mandel*, fifteen.

## CHAPTER VII.

### OF VERBS.

Verbs are divided into *Auxiliary*, *Transitive\** and *Intransitive*.† *Transitive verbs* have an *active*, *passive* and *reflective form*. Verbs used only in the third person singular of the neuter gender, without having any definite subject, are called *impersonal*: those formed by composition with another word, are styled *compound*. As all these different kinds of verbs are either *regular* or *irregular*, we shall, before we commence conjugating them, show in what their *regularity* and *irregularity* consist.

#### (§ 52.) A. *Regularity of Verbs.*

In German, as in English, there is but one conjugation of regular verbs, and its different forms are either simple or compound.

#### I. *Simple Forms.*

1. In German, the present infinitive of all verbs terminates in *en*; as *loben*, to praise. That part, which precedes the termination *en*, is the principal part of the verb; as *lob* in *loben*. If the principal part terminates in *l*, or *r*, the vowel *e* before *n* in the termination, is commonly dropped. Thus, we say: *hämern*, and not *hammeren*, to hammer. If the verb is not formed by composition or derivation, its principal part commonly consists of but one syllable, which is called the radical part.

2. The present participle is always formed by adding the letter *b* to the present infinitive; as, *loben*, to praise; *lobend*, praising.

3. The past participle is formed by adding *t* or *et* to the principal part, and by prefixing the syllable *ge*. Thus, the principal part of *loben* being *lob*, the past participle is *gelobt* or *gelobet*.

**REMARK.**— Verbs derived from foreign languages and terminating in *iren*, do not take, in the past participle, the

---

\* Or active.

† Or neuter.

Although we have retained the common terms, transitive and intransitive, still I would ask competent judges, whether it would not be well to substitute the terms, subjective and objective, since they more clearly indicate the idea which is to be conveyed.

prefix *ge*; as, *studiren*, to study; past participle *studirt* and not *gestudirt*. The prefix *ge* is likewise omitted in verbs compounded with any of the following particles: *ge*, *be*, *ver*, *zer*, *er*, *emp*, *ent*, *wider*. Hence, the past participle of *berarmen* is *berarmt* and not *geberarmt*.—But if those syllables are a part of the radical verb itself, the prefix *ge* is required in the past participle; as, *beten*, to pray; *Past Partic.* *gebetet*.

4. The imperative mood, and the present and imperfect tenses of the active voice, are formed by adding to the principal part certain terminations, pointed out in the following table.\*

	Persons.	Principal Part.	Imp've.	Present.		Imperfect.	
				Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.
<i>Singular.</i>	1st	lob		e	e	te or ete	ete
	2d	lob	e	st or est	est	test or etest	etest
	3d	lob	e	t or et	e	te or ete	ete
<i>Plural.</i>	1st	lob	en	en	en	ten or eten	eten
	2d	lob	et or t	t or et	et	tet or etet	etet
	3d	lob	en	en	en	ten or eten	eten

## OBSERVATIONS.

*a.* Looking at the present tense, we see that the characteristic difference between the indicative and subjunctive consists in the third person singular, which in the indicative terminates in *t* or *et*, and in the subjunctive in *e*. But, moreover, in the second person, both singular and plural of the indicative, the vowel *e* in the termination, may at any time be omitted for the sake of euphony, whilst this omission should be avoided in the subjunctive mood.

*b.* There is no difference in the imperfect of the two moods, except that in the terminations of the indicative, the vowel *e* be-

\* To see the application of this table, the student will do well to compare it with the regular verb *loben* under § 57.

fore *t* may be omitted on account of euphony, whilst in the subjunctive it should be retained.

The vowel *e*, in the terminations of the imperfect, can never be dropped, if, by omitting it, this tense could not easily be distinguished from the present. Thus, we must say: *ich betete*, I prayed, and not *ich bette*; for the latter would sound like the present, *ich bete*.

c. The plural of the imperative does not differ from the plural of the present indicative.

## II. Compound Forms.

1. In German, as in English, the compound forms are made by joining proper auxiliary verbs to the past participle or to the infinitive mood. Thus, the first future of the active voice is always formed by adding the auxiliary verb *werden* to the present infinitive active; as, *ich werde loben*, I shall praise. The present tense of the passive voice is formed by joining the same auxiliary verb to the past participle; as, *ich werde gelobt*, I am praised; and by adding to this present tense another *werden*, the first future of the passive voice is obtained; as, *ich werde gelobt werden*, I shall be praised. At first sight, the student sees how these three tenses differ from one another. The past tenses of the active voice are formed by joining the auxiliary verb *haben* to the past participle; as, *ich habe gelobt*, I have praised. But some intransitive verbs, as we shall see hereafter, require the auxiliary verb *sein*, to be used instead of *haben*; as, *ich bin geworden*, I have become.

2. When in the compound forms one or two participles meet with an infinitive, the latter follows after the former; as, *gelobt haben*, to have praised; *gelobt worden sein*, to have been praised; *ich würde gelobt haben*, I would have praised.

3. When in the finite tenses an auxiliary verb is joined to the past participle, or to the infinitive, the auxiliary goes through all the variations of person and number, whilst the past participle or the infinitive mood itself continues invariably the same. When there are two or more auxiliary verbs, the first of them only is varied according to person and number.

Hence, from all that has been said, we see, that regular verbs always preserve their principal part unchanged, and take those terminations that have been pointed out.

(§ 53.) B. *Irregularity of Verbs.*

Irregular verbs are those which either vary in their principal part, or have not the common terminations. Whilst the regular verbs in the imperfect always terminate in *te*, the irregular verbs, with few exceptions, end in a consonant, which is generally the last radical letter. The past participle, instead of terminating in *t* or *et*, as in regular verbs, has with very few exceptions the termination *en*. The compound forms of irregular verbs, differ from those of regular verbs only in the past participle.

## CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

### I. CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

The principal auxiliary verbs in German are, *haben*, to have; *sein*, to be; and *werden*, to become. They are all very irregular.\*

(§ 54.) 1. *Haben*, to have.

Infinitive.

Participle.

*Pres. haben*, to have.

*Pres. habend*, having.

*Perf. gehabt haben*, to have had.

*Past. gehabt*, had.

Imperative.

*Singular. habe* (du), have (thou).  
*habe* er, let him have.

*Plural. haben* wir, let us have.  
*habet* or *habt* (ihr), have (you).  
*haben* sie, let them have.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Present.*

*Singular.*

*Singular.*

*ich habe*, I have.

*ich habe*, I may have.

*du hast*, thou hast.

*du habest*, thou mayst have.

*er, sie, es hat*, he, she, it has.

*er, sie, es habe*, he, she, it may have.

---

\* Other auxiliary verbs, such as *sollen*, *wollen*, *können*, *müssen*, &c., will be found in the list of the irregular verbs. — In German, there is no verb corresponding to the English auxiliary "do." Thus, whilst in English we would say: "Did he come?" in German we must say: *Kam er?* or, *Ist er gekommen?* Again,—"He did not come," in German: *Er kam nicht*, or, *Er ist nicht gekommen*.

*Plural.*

wir haben, we have.  
ihr habt or habet, you have.  
sie haben, they have.

*Plural.*

wir haben, we may have.  
ihr habet, you may have.  
sie haben, they may have.

*Imperfect.*

*Singular.*

ich hatte, I had.  
du hattest, thou hadst.  
er hatte, he had.

*Singular.*

ich hätte, I might have.  
du hättest, thou mightst have.  
er hätte, he might have.

*Plural.*

wir hatten, we had.  
ihr hattet, you had.  
sie hatten, they had.

*Plural.*

wir hätten, we might have.  
ihr hättet, you might have.  
sie hätten, they might have.

*Perfect.*

ich habe gehabt, I have had.  
du hast gehabt, &c.

ich habe gehabt, I may have had.  
du habest gehabt, &c.

*Pluperfect.*

ich hatte gehabt, I had had.  
du hattest gehabt, &c.

ich hätte gehabt, I might have had.  
du hättest gehabt, &c.

*First Future.*

*Singular.*

ich werde haben, I shall have.  
du wirst haben, thou wilt have.  
er wird haben, he will have.

*Singular.*

ich werde haben, I shall have.  
du werdest haben, thou wilt have.  
er werde haben, he will have.

*Plural.*

wir werden haben, we shall have.  
ihr werdet haben, you will have.  
sie werden haben, they will have.

*Plural.*

wir werden haben, we shall have.  
ihr werdet haben, you will have.  
sie werden haben, they will have.

*Second Future.*

ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have had.      ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have had.  
 du wirst gehabt haben, &c.      du werdest gehabt haben, &c.

*First Conditional.*

*Singular.* ich würde haben, I should or would have.  
                  du würdest haben, thou wouldst have.  
                  er würde haben, he would have.

*Plural.* wir würden haben, we should have.  
                  ihr würdet haben, you would have.  
                  sie würden haben, they would have.

*Second Conditional.*

ich würde gehabt haben, I should have had.  
 du würdest gehabt haben, &c.

(§ 55.) 2. *Sein*, to be.

*Infinitive.**Participle.*

*Pres.* sein, to be.      *Pres.* seiend, being.  
*Perf.* gewesen sein, to have been.      *Past.* gewesen, been.

*Imperative.*

*Singular.* sei (du), be (thou).  
                  sei er, let him be.

*Plural.* seien or sein wir, let us be.  
                  seid (ihr), be (you).  
                  sein or seien sie, let them be.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.**Present.**Singular.**Singular.*

ich bin, I am.  
 du bist, thou art.  
 er, sie, es ist, he, she, it is.

ich sei, I may be.  
 du seiest or seist, thou mayst be.  
 er sei, he may be.

*Plural.*

wir sind, we are.  
ihr seid, you are.  
sie sind, they are.

*Plural.*

wir seien or sein, we may be.  
ihr seiet or seid, you may be.  
sie seien or sein, they may be.

*Imperfect.*

*Singular.*

ich war, I was.  
du warest or warst, thou wast.  
er war, he was.

*Singular.*

ich wäre, I might be.  
du wärest, thou mightst be.  
er wäre, he might be.

*Plural.*

wir waren, we were.  
ihr waret, you were.  
sie waren, they were.

*Plural.*

wir wären, we might be.  
ihr wäret, you might be.  
sie wären, they might be.

*Perfect.*

ich bin gewesen, I have been.  
du bist gewesen, &c.

ich sei gewesen, I may have been.  
du seiest gewesen, &c.

*Pluperfect.*

ich war gewesen, I had been.  
du warst gewesen, &c.

ich wäre gewesen, I might have been.  
du wärest gewesen, &c.

*First Future.*

*Singular.*

ich werde sein, I shall be.  
du wirst sein, thou wilt be.  
er wird sein, he will be.

*Singular.*

ich werde sein, I shall be.  
du werdest sein, thou wilt be.  
er werde sein, he will be.

*Plural.*

wir werden sein, we shall be.  
ihr werdet sein, you will be.  
sie werden sein, they will be.

*Plural.*

wir werden sein, we shall be.  
ihr werdet sein, you will be.  
sie werden sein, they will be.

*Second Future.*

ich werde gewesen sein, I shall have been.    ich werde gewesen sein, I shall have been.  
 du wirst gewesen sein, &c.    du werdest gewesen sein, &c.

*First Conditional.*

*Singular.* ich würde sein, I should be.  
               du würdest sein, thou wouldst be.  
               er würde sein, he would be.  
*Plural.*    wir würden sein, we should be.  
               ihr würdet sein, you would be.  
               sie würden sein, they would be.

*Second Conditional.*

ich würde gewesen sein, I should have been.  
 du würdest gewesen sein, &c.

 (§ 56.) 3. **Werden**, to become.

## Infinitive.

## Participle.

*Pres.* werden, to become.    *Pres.* werdend, becoming.  
*Perf.* geworden sein, to have become.    *Past.* geworden, become.

## Imperative.

*Singular.* werde (du), become (thou).  
               werde er, let him become.  
*Plural.*    werden wir, let us become.  
               werdet (ihr), become (you).  
               werden sie, let them become.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

*Present.**Singular.**Singular.*

ich werde, I become.  
 du wirst, thou becomest.  
 er wird, he becomes.

ich werde, I may become.  
 du werdest, thou mayst become.  
 er werde, he may become.

*Plural.*

wir werden, we become.  
ihr werdet, you become.  
sie werden, they become.

*Plural.*

wir werden, we may become.  
ihr werdet, you may become.  
sie werden, they may become.

*Imperfect.*

*Singular.*

ich wurde or ward, I became.  
du wurdest or wardest, thou be-  
camest.  
er wurde or ward, he became.

*Singular.*

ich würde, I might become.  
du würdest, thou mightst be-  
come.  
er würde, he might become.

*Plural.*

wir wurden, we became.  
ihr wurdet, you became.  
sie wurden, they became.

*Plural.*

wir würden, we might become.  
ihr würdet, you might become.  
sie würden, they might become.

*Perfect.*

ich bin geworden, I have be-  
come.  
du bist geworden, &c.

ich sei geworden, I may have  
become.  
du seist geworden, &c.

*Pluperfect.*

ich war geworden, I had be-  
come.  
du wardest geworden, &c.

ich wäre geworden, I might  
have become.  
du wärest geworden, &c.

*First Future.*

ich werde werden, I shall be-  
come.  
du wirst werden, &c.

ich werde werden, I shall be-  
come.  
du werdest werden, &c.

*Second Future.*

ich werde geworden sein, I shall  
have become.  
du wirst geworden sein, &c.

ich werde geworden sein, I shall  
have become.  
du werdest geworden sein, &c.

*First Conditional.*

ich würde werden, I should become.  
 du würdest werden, &c.

*Second Conditional.*

ich würde geworden sein, I should have become.  
 du würdest geworden sein, &c.

REMARK.—In the passive voice, the abridged form *worden* is used instead of *geworden*; as, *ich bin geliebt worden*, I have been loved.

## II. CONJUGATION OF A REGULAR TRANSITIVE VERB.

## (§ 57.) 1. ACTIVE FORM.

## Infinitive.

## Participle.

*Pres.* loben, to praise.

*Pres.* lobend, praising.

*Perf.* gelobt haben, to have  
 praised.

*Past.* gelobt, praised.

## Imperative.

*Singular.* lobe (du), praise (thou).  
 lobe er, let him praise.

*Plural.* loben wir, let us praise.  
 lobet or lobt (ihr), praise (you).  
 loben sie, let them praise.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

*Present.**Singular.**Singular.*

ich lobe, I praise.\*  
 du lobst or lobest, thou praisest.  
 er lobt or lobet, he praises.

ich lobe, I may praise.  
 du lobest, thou mayst praise.  
 er lobe, he may praise.

*Plural.**Plural.*

wir loben, we praise.  
 ihr lobt or lobet, you praise.  
 sie loben, they praise.

wir loben, we may praise.  
 ihr lobet, you may praise.  
 sie loben, they may praise.

---

\* Or, I do praise or am praising.

*Imperfect.*

*Singular.*

ich lobte or lobete, I praised.\*  
 du lobtest or lobetest, thou  
 praisedst.  
 er lobte or lobete, he praised.

*Singular.*

ich lobete, I might praise.  
 du lobetest, thou mightst praise.  
 er lobete, he might praise.

*Plural.*

wir lobten or lobeten, we praised.  
 ihr lobtet or lobetet, you praised.  
 sie lobten or lobeten, they praised.

*Plural.*

wir lobeten, we might praise.  
 ihr lobetet, you might praise.  
 sie lobeten, they might praise.

*Perfect.*

ich habe gelobt, I have praised.  
 du hast gelobt, &c.

ich habe gelobt, I may have  
 praised.  
 du habest gelobt, &c.

*Pluperfect.*

ich hatte gelobt, I had praised.  
 du hattest gelobt, &c.

ich hätte gelobt, I might have  
 praised.  
 du hättest gelobt, &c.

*First Future.*

ich werde loben, I shall praise.  
 du wirst loben, &c.

ich werde loben, I shall praise.  
 du werdest loben, &c.

*Second Future.*

ich werde gelobt haben, I shall  
 have praised.  
 du wirst gelobt haben, &c.

ich werde gelobt haben, I shall  
 have praised.  
 du werdest gelobt haben, &c.

*First Conditional.*

ich würde loben, I should praise.  
 du würdest loben, &c.

*Second Conditional.*

ich würde gelobt haben, I should have praised.  
 du würdest gelobt haben, &c.

---

\* Or, I did praise or was praising.

## (§ 58.) 2. PASSIVE FORM.

## Infinitive.

## Participle.

*Pres.* gelobt werden, to be praised.      gelobt, praised.

*Perf.* gelobt worden sein, to have been praised.

## Imperative.

*Singular.* werde (du) gelobt, be (thou) praised.  
werde er gelobt, let him be praised.

*Plural.* werden wir gelobt, let us be praised.  
werdet (ihr) gelobt, be (ye or you) praised.  
werden sie gelobt, let them be praised.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

*Present.*

ich werde gelobt, I am praised.      ich werde gelobt, I may be  
du wirst gelobt, &c.      praised.  
du werdest gelobt, &c.

*Imperfect.*

ich wurde\* gelobt, I was praised.      ich würde gelobt, I might be  
du würdest gelobt, &c.      praised.  
du würdest gelobt, &c.

*Perfect.*

ich bin gelobt worden,† I have been praised.      ich sei gelobt worden, I may  
du bist gelobt worden, &c.      have been praised.  
du seist gelobt worden, &c.

\* Or ich ward.

† Worden is frequently omitted; but it should be retained when the agent of the action is mentioned. Thus, we may say: Dieser Brief ist schön geschrieben; but we should say: Dieser Brief ist von ihm schön geschrieben worden, This letter has been well written by him.

*Pluperfect.*

ich war gelobt worden, I had been praised.	ich wäre gelobt worden, I might have been praised.
du warst gelobt worden, &c.	du wärest gelobt worden, &c

*First Future.*

ich werde gelobt werden, I shall be praised.	ich werde gelobt werden, I shall be praised.
du wirst gelobt werden, &c.	du werdest gelobt werden, &c.

*Second Future.*

ich werde gelobt worden sein, I shall have been praised.	ich werde gelobt worden sein, I shall have been praised.
du wirst gelobt worden sein, &c.	du werdest gelobt worden sein, &c.

*First Conditional.*

ich würde gelobt werden, I should be praised.
du würdest gelobt werden, &c.

*Second Conditional.*

ich würde gelobt worden sein, I should have been praised.
du würdest gelobt worden sein, &c.

## (§ 59.) 3. REFLECTIVE FORM.

## Infinitive.

## Participle.

<i>Pres.</i> sich loben, to praise one's self.	<i>Pres.</i> sich lobend, praising him- self, herself, itself, or themselves.
<i>Perf.</i> sich gelobt haben, to have praised one's self.	

## Imperative.

<i>Singular.</i> lobe dich, praise thyself.
lobe er sich, let him praise himself.

<i>Plural.</i> loben wir uns, let us praise ourselves.
lobt or lobet euch, praise yourselves.
loben sie sich, let them praise themselves.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

*Present.**Singular.*

ich lobe mich, I praise myself.  
 du lobst dich, thou praisest thyself.  
 er, sie, or es lobt sich, he, she, it praises himself, herself, or itself.

*Singular.*

ich lobe mich, I may praise myself.  
 du lobest dich, thou mayst praise thyself.  
 er lobe sich, he may praise himself.

*Plural.*

wir loben uns, we praise ourselves.  
 ihr lobet euch, you praise yourselves.  
 sie loben sich, they praise themselves.

*Plural.*

wir loben uns, we may praise ourselves.  
 ihr lobet euch, you may praise yourselves.  
 sie loben sich, they may praise themselves.

*Imperfect.*

ich lobte mich, I praised myself.  
 du lobtest dich, &c.

ich lobete mich, I might praise myself.  
 du lobetest dich, &c.

*Perfect.*

ich habe mich gelobt, I have praised myself.  
 du hast dich gelobt, &c.

ich habe mich gelobt, I may have praised myself.  
 du habest dich gelobt, &c.

*Pluperfect.*

ich hatte mich gelobt, I had praised myself.  
 du hattest dich gelobt, &c.

ich hätte mich gelobt, I might have praised myself.  
 du hättest dich gelobt, &c.

*First Future.*

ich werde mich loben, I shall praise myself.  
 du wirst dich loben, &c.

ich werde mich loben, I shall praise myself.  
 du werdest dich loben, &c.

*Second Future.*

ich werde mich gelobt haben, I shall have praised myself.	ich werde mich gelobt haben, I shall have praised myself.
du wirst dich gelobt haben, &c.	du werdest dich gelobt haben, &c.

*Conditional Tenses.*

*First Conditional.*

ich würde mich loben, I should  
praise myself.  
du würdest dich loben, &c.

*Second Conditional.*

ich würde mich gelobt haben, I  
should have praised myself.  
du würdest dich gelobt haben,  
&c.

In the same manner conjugate: *sich schämen*, to be ashamed;  
*sich fürchten*, to fear one's self.

REMARK.—Some reflective verbs, as we shall see in syntax, require, instead of the accusative, the dative of the personal pronouns, as for instance *sich schmeicheln*, to flatter one's self.

*Present.*

ich schmeichle mir, I flatter myself.  
du schmeichelst dir, thou flatterest thyself.  
er, sie, es schmeichelt sich, he, she, it flatters himself, herself, itself.

*Plural.*

wir schmeicheln uns, we flatter ourselves.  
ihr schmeichelt euch, you flatter yourselves.  
sie schmeicheln sich, they flatter themselves.

*Imperfect.*

ich schmeichelte mir, &c.

(§ 60.) III. INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

Intransitive verbs refer only to the subject, and, as they do not affect any external object, they can have no passive voice.\* Their conjugation does not differ from the active voice of tran-

---

\* There are a few intransitive verbs, which sometimes have a passive form without having a passive signification. Thus we say: *Es wurde viel gelacht*, which is the same as: *Man lachte viel*, They laughed much.

sitive verbs, except that in the compound tenses, the auxiliary verb *sein* is sometimes used instead of *haben*, as in the following verb.

## Infinitive.

## Participle.

*Pres.* landen, to land.

*Pres.* landend, landing.

*Perf.* gelandet sein, to have  
landed.

*Past.* gelandet, landed.

## Imperative.

*Singular.* lande (du), land (thou).  
lande er, let him land.

*Plural.* landen wir, let us land.  
landet (ihr), land (you).  
landen sie, let them land.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

*Present.*

ich lande, I land.

ich lande, I may land.

du landest, thou landest.

du landest, thou mayst land.

er landet, &c.

er lande, &c.

*Imperfect.*

ich landete, I landed.

ich landete, I might land.

du landetest, &c.

du landetest, &c.

*Perfect.*

ich bin gelandet, I have landed.

ich sei gelandet, I may have  
landed.

du bist gelandet, &c.

du seist gelandet, &c.

*Pluperfect.*

ich war gelandet, I had landed.

ich wäre gelandet, I might have  
landed.

du warst gelandet, &c.

du wärest gelandet, &c.

*First Future.*

ich werde landen, I shall land.

ich werde landen, I shall land.

du wirst landen, &c.

du werdest landen, &c.

*Second Future.*

ich werde gelandet sein, I shall have landed.	ich werde gelandet sein, I shall have landed.
du wirst gelandet sein, &c.	du werdest gelandet sein, &c.

*Conditional Tenses.*

*First Conditional.*

*Second Conditional.*

ich würde landen, I should land.	ich würde gelandet sein, I should have landed.
du würdest landen, &c.	du würdest gelandet sein, &c.

(§ 61.) *Rules for the Proper Use of Sein and Haben in Connexion with Intransitive Verbs.*

**A. Sein.**

The *Auxiliary Verb Sein* is used :

1. With those intransitive verbs which denote a transition from one state or condition to another ; as,

Das Wasser ist gefroren,*	The water is frozen.
Die Flasche ist geborsten,	The bottle has burst.
Dieser Mann ist verarmt,	This man has become poor.
Mein Freund ist genesen,	My friend has recovered.
Das Kind ist gefallen,	The child has fallen.

A characteristic mark of this kind of verbs, is that their past participle, like an adjective, may be joined directly to a noun. Thus, for instance, we say : Das Kind ist jetzt gestorben, The child has just died ; and we can also say : das gestorbene Kind, the dead child.

2. When the verb indicates a motion with reference to its particular direction ; as,

Er ist in die Stadt geeilt,	He has hastened to the city.
Mein Vater ist nach Philadelphia gereist,	My father has gone to Philadelphia.

The particular direction is not always to be expressed, but may also be understood ; as, Mein Bruder ist gekommen, My

---

\* As the characteristic of irregular verbs has been already shown in § 52, we do not hesitate to use them, even before we have given the particular rules of their conjugation.

brother has come, *i. e.* to me or to some other person, or to some particular place; as, *Das Schiff ist abgesegelt*, The vessel has sailed, *i. e.* to the place for which it was bound; *Er ist gegangen*, he has gone, *i. e.* whither he intended.

3. When we wish to denote the manner of the motion rather than the motion itself; as,

*Ich bin langsam geritten*, I rode slowly.  
*Bist du gegangen oder geritten*, Did you walk or ride?

### B. *Haben*.

The *Auxiliary Verb Haben* is used:

1. In all intransitive verbs implying an action, with the exception of the two preceding classes; as,

*Ich habe gearbeitet*, I have worked.  
*Ich habe gelacht*, I have laughed.  
*Ich habe gesungen*, I have sung.

2. In those verbs, the infinitive of which denotes a continuous state; as,

*schlafen*, to sleep; *Perf. ich habe geschlafen*:  
*wachen*, to be awake; *Perf. ich habe gewacht*:  
*sitzen*, to be sitting; *Perf. ich habe gesessen*.

*Exception*. — According to this rule, the verbs *sein*, to be; *bleiben* or *verbleiben*, to remain, ought to be conjugated with the auxiliary verb *haben*; but they take *sein*; as, *ich bin gewesen*, *ich bin geblieben*.

3. If intransitive verbs are used as transitive, impersonal, or reflective verbs; as,

*Ich habe meinen Schimmel geritten*, I rode my gray horse.  
*Ich habe mich müde gegangen*, I have become tired by walking.\*

**OBSERVATION.** — Reflecting on what precedes, we may see that the perfect tense with *sein*, is a relative form, either implying the idea of some change or contrast, or denoting the particular manner in which an action is performed: but the perfect tense with *haben*, is an absolute form in which the completion or the performance of the action is principally viewed. Some

---

\* Literally: I have walked myself tired.

intransitive verbs may be conjugated either with *sein* or *haben* according as the actions or events to which they refer, are viewed relatively or absolutely. Thus, by saying: "*Ich bin geritten*, I rode," we contrast riding with walking; but by saying: "*Ich habe geritten*, I have taken a ride," we simply represent the act of riding as completed. In the following sentence: "*Das Schiff ist gelandet*, The vessel has come to land," we simply view the vessel in its state of rest; but if we say: "*Das Schiff hat gelandet*, we rather refer to the act of landing as completed.

The difference between *sein* and *haben* will become more obvious, by comparing the following sentences, as they stand opposite to each other.

<i>Er hat geschlafen</i> , He has slept.	<i>Er ist eingeschlafen</i> , He has fallen asleep.
<i>Ich habe gewacht</i> , I have been awake.	<i>Ich bin erwacht</i> , I have awakened.
<i>Es hat gebrannt</i> , There has been a fire.	<i>Es ist verbrannt</i> , It has been burnt.
<i>Es hat gefroren</i> , It has been freezing.	<i>Das Wasser ist gefroren</i> , The water has frozen.
<i>Er hat viel gereist</i> , He has travelled much.	<i>Er ist nach New York gereist</i> , He has gone to New York.
<i>Der Vogel hat lange geflattert</i> , The bird has been long fluttering.	<i>Der Vogel ist in das Feld geflattert</i> , The bird has flown into the field.

(§ 62.) IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Infinitive.

Participle.

*Pres.* regnen, to rain.

*Pres.* regnend, raining.

*Perf.* geregnet haben, to have rained.

*Past.* geregnet, rained.

Imperative.

*es regne*, let it rain.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Present.*

*es regnet*, it rains.

*es regne*, it may rain.

*Imperfect.*

es regnete, it rained.

es regnete, it might rain.

*Perfect.*

es hat geregnet, it has rained.

es habe geregnet, it may have rained.

*Pluperfect.*

es hatte geregnet, it had rained.

es hätte geregnet, it might have rained.

*First Future.*

es wird regnen, it will rain.

es werde regnen, it will rain.

*Second Future.*

es wird geregnet haben, it will have rained.

es werde geregnet haben, it will have rained.

*Conditional Tenses.**First Conditional.*

es würde regnen, it would rain.

*Second Conditional.*

es würde geregnet haben, it would have rained.

## (§ 63.) VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PARTICLES.

The particles which are joined to verbs, are some of them inseparable, some separable, and others both inseparable and separable.

*I. Inseparable Particles.*

The inseparable particles are: *ge*, *be*, *ver*, *zer*, *er*, *emp*, *ent*, *wider*, *miß*.\*

---

\* These particles are used only in composition: *ge* merely serves to render the primitive more emphatic; *be*, an abbreviation of *bei*, denotes an extension of the action over an object or its influence upon it. By the use of this particle many intransitive verbs are converted into transitive; *ver* probably corresponds to the Latin *per*; *zer* indicates destruction or separation, and is perhaps the same as the English "tear;" *er* has various significations, commonly it denotes elevation, acquisition, extension, or transition from one state or condition to another; *emp*, a contraction of *in* and *be*, occurs only in *empfinden*, *empfangen*, *empfehlen*; *ent* denotes departure, origin, or deprivation; *wider* signifies against; *miß* corresponds to the English *mis* and *dis*.

RULES.

1. These particles are always prefixed to the verb, and are written with it as one word; as, *befehlen*, to order; *verzeihen*, to pardon.

2. When *zu* is required in the infinitive, it precedes the inseparable particle; as, *zu verzeihen*.

3. Verbs commencing with any of the preceding particles, do not admit the prefix *ge* in the past participle; as, *bedecken* or *zu bedecken*, to cover; past participle, *bedeckt*: *entehren* or *zu entehren*, to dishonour; past participle, *entehrt*.

REMARK. — If the letters of the inseparable particles belong to the radical part of the verb, the participial augment *ge* is required; as, *beten*, to pray; past participle, *gebetet*: *geben*, to give; past participle, *gegeben*. — The participial augment *ge* is also sometimes retained in verbs compounded with *miß*, particularly in transitive verbs; as, *mißbilligen* or *zu mißbilligen*, to disapprove; past participle, *gemißbilligt*.

II. *Separable Particles.*

Particles not enumerated among the inseparable ones, are separable, i. e. they are sometimes prefixed to their verb, and sometimes they follow after it, according to the following rules.\*

1. The separable particles are always prefixed to the participles; as, *vorstellend*, representing; *vorgestellt*, represented.

2. They are likewise prefixed to the present infinitive, or to the particle *zu*; as, *weggehen* or *wegzugehen*, to go away.

3. In the imperative mood, and in the present and imperfect tenses of absolute sentences (§ 98.), the separable particles are put after the verb, and commonly at the end of the sentence; as, *zurückschicken* or *zurückzuschicken*, to send back; *schicke mir mein Buch zurück*, send back my book; *ich schickte dein Buch gestern zurück*, I sent your book back yesterday.

4. But in dependent sentences, which commonly require the verb at the end (§ 98.), the separable particles are also prefixed to the verb in the present and imperfect tenses; as, *Als ich dein Buch gestern zurückschickte*, When I sent your book back yesterday.

---

\* The separable particles always take the accent.

The separable particles which most frequently occur, are :

ab : abgehen, to go off.	los : losprechen, to acquit.
an : anfangen, to commence.	mit : mitbringen, to bring with.
auf : aufstehen, to arise.	nach : nachlaufen, to run after.
aus : austrinken, to drink out.	nieder : niederfallen, to fall down.
bei : beifügen, to add.	ob : obliegen, to be incumbent upon.
dar : darstellen, to represent.	vor : vorstellen, to represent.
ein : einschlafen, to fall asleep.	weg : wegnehmen, to take away.
entgegen : entgegengehen, to go to meet.	zu : zudecken, to cover.
fehl : fehlschlagen, to fail.	zurück : zurückkommen, to come back.
fort : fortlaufen, to run off.	
her : herkommen, to come from.	
hin : hingehen, to go thither.	

The following separable particles are almost all compounds of the preceding ones :

herab,	hinüber,	herum,	einher.
hinab,	herzu,	herunter,	vorüber.
heran,	hinzu,	darunter,	vorbei.
hinan,	herdurch,	dabei,	voran.
heraus,	hindurch,	dafür,	voraus.
hinaus,	herbei,	davon,	überein.
herauf,	herein,	darunter,	anheim.
hinauf,	hinein,	dawider,	einher.
herüber,	hervor,	dazwischen,	überein.

III. *The Particles which are both Separable and Inseparable, are :*

durch, through ; um, around ; über, over ; unter, under ; hinter, behind ; wieder, again.

#### RULES.

1. These particles are separable and have the accent, when their original and natural meaning is not only retained, but is also the prevailing idea in the compounds ; and this is chiefly the case when the verb is intransitive. In compounds of this kind, each of the constituent parts preserves the peculiar meaning which it has when standing by itself.

2. But they are inseparable and without an accent, if not their original meaning, but the idea of the verb prevails, so that the particles seem, as it were, absorbed by the verb, or are used only in a figurative sense. The whole emphasis then lies on the verb, which is commonly transitive, or at least used so.

3. In the same verb, the particles may be both separable and inseparable; but the signification will be different.

4. Instead of *durch*, *um*, *unter*, *über*, when they are separable, we may substitute *hindurch*, *herum*, *hinunter*, *hinüber*.

### Examples.

*Ue'bergehen* or *überzugehen*, to pass over; *gehe* (du) *über* or *hinüber*, pass (thou) over; *er ist übergegangen*, he has passed over.

*Ueberge'hen* or *zu übergehen*, to omit; *übergehe es*, omit it; *er hat es übergangen*, he has omitted it.

*Wie'derhohlen* or *wiederzuhohlen*, to fetch back; *hole dein Buch wieder*, fetch your book back; *Perf. ich habe wiedergehohlt*.

*Wiederhoh'len* or *zu wiederhohlen*, to repeat; *wiederhohle es*, repeat it; *Perf. ich habe wiederhohlt*.

*Um'gehen*, to go astray; *er geht um*, he goes astray.

*Umge'hen*, to go round; *er umgeht die Stadt*, he goes round the city.

*Un'terhalten*, to hold under; *halte die Hand unter*, hold thy hand under; *Perf. ich habe untergehalten*.

*Unterhal'ten*, to entertain; *ich unterhielt die ganze Gesellschaft*, I entertained the whole company; *Perf. ich habe unterhalten*.

Conjugate through all the moods and tenses: *ü'bersetzen*, to place over; *überset'zen*, to translate; *wie'derhohlen*, to fetch back; *wiederhoh'len*, to repeat.

(§ 64.) All other adjuncts of the verb are subject to the same rules of position as the separable particles, but they are not written with the verb as one word.\* Thus we say:

*Athem hohlen*, to take breath; *ich hohle Athem*, I breathe.

*Beliebt sein*, to be beloved; *dieser Knabe ist sehr beliebt*, this boy is very much beloved.

---

\* Except sometimes in the infinitive mood; as, *Athem holen* or *Athem'holen*.

**Um Rath fragen**, to ask for advice; *ich fragte ihn um Rath*, I asked him for advice.

**Schön schreiben**, to write well; *dieser Schüler schreibt schön*, this scholar writes very well.

**Stehen bleiben**, to remain standing; *er bleibt auf halbem Wege stehen*, he stops half way.

#### REMARKS.

1. The adjectives **voll** and **offen** constituting with the verb but one word or idea, are used like the inseparable particles; as, **vollenden**, to finish; past participle, **vollendet**; **vollstrecken**, to accomplish; past participle, **vollstreckt**; **offenbaren**, to reveal; past participle, **offenbart** or **geoffenbart**.

2. The following compound verbs, probably derivatives of compound nouns, are always inseparable; but they take in the past participle the prefix **ge**:

**Antworten**, to answer; **brandmarken**, to brand; **frohlocken**, to exult; **fuchsschwänzen**, to fawn; **handhaben**, to handle; **heirathen**, to marry; **herbergen**, to lodge; **kurzweilen**, to sport; **liebäugeln**, to ogle; **lieblosen**, to caress; **lobpreisen**, to praise; **lustwandeln**, to take a walk of pleasure; **muthmaßen**, to conjecture; **rathschlagen**, to consult; **rechtfertigen**, to justify; **urkunden**, to testify; **urtheilen**, to judge; **wallfahrten**, to go on a pilgrimage; **weissagen**, to prophesy.—The student will become more familiar with the position of words in the second part of syntax.

#### IRREGULAR VERBS.

##### (§ 65.) *General Rules.*

1. The present participle, the third person singular of the imperative and all its plural, the present subjunctive, the plural number of the present indicative, and also the first person singular of the present indicative (except in the second division of the sixth class, and in *sein*), are never irregular.

2. The second and third persons singular of the present indicative, are irregular chiefly in those verbs, which have the radical vowel **a** or **e**. In those which have **e**, the second person singular of the imperative is also generally irregular.

3. The first person singular of the imperfect indicative, with a few exceptions, terminates in a consonant, which generally is

the last radical letter. The third person singular of this tense is always the same as the first, and the other persons are formed from the first, by adding the usual terminations ; as,

ich sah,	I saw.	wir sahen,	we saw.
du sahst,	thou sawest.	ihr sahet,	you saw.
er sah,	he saw.	sie sahen,	they saw.

4. The imperfect subjunctive, with a few exceptions, is formed from the imperfect indicative, by changing, in the radical syllable, the vowels *a, o, u*, into *ä, ö, ü*, and by adding the vowel *e*, in case it be wanting; as, *ich band*, I bound; subjunctive, *ich bände*, I might or would bind; *ich verlor*, I lost; subjunctive, *ich verlöre*, I might or would lose. When those vowels do not occur, the imperfect subjunctive differs from the imperfect indicative, only by the additional vowel *e*; as, *ich blieb*; subjunctive, *ich bliebe*. The first and third persons of the singular are always the same; and the other persons are formed from the first, by adding the usual terminations ; as,

ich sähe,	I might see.	wir sähen,	we might see.
du sähest,	thou mightst see.	ihr sähet,	you might see.
er sähe,	he might see.	sie sähen,	they might see.

5. When the imperfect indicative terminates in a consonant, as it nearly-always does, the past participle ends in *en* ; as, *ich sah*, I saw ; *gesehen*, seen. But, when the imperfect, as in regular verbs, takes the termination *te*, which, however, is but seldom the case, the past participle terminates in *t* ; as, *ich brachte*, I brought ; past participle, *gebracht*.

6. The past participle takes (as in regular verbs) the prefix *ge*, except when the verb commences with the inseparable particles *ge, be, ver, zer, er, emp, ent, wider*.

7. The infinitives, *dürfen, können, lassen, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen, sehen, helfen, heißen* (as also the regular verb *hören*), are used in place of the past participle when another infinitive precedes. Thus we say : *Er hat es nicht thun wollen*, He did not wish to do it; without the infinitive *thun*, we would read : *Er hat es nicht gewollt*.

*Particular Rules of the Irregular Verbs.*

We shall view the irregular verbs in different classes and divisions, and the characteristic marks of the several classes and divisions will be given in rules preceding them.\*

## (§ 66.) FIRST CLASS.

To this class belong all those irregular verbs which have in the infinitive the diphthong *ei*, which in the imperfect and past participle is changed into *ie* or *i*. Sometimes the consonant after *i* is doubled. All verbs of this class are irregular only in the imperfect and past participle. According to the said changes, we shall subdivide this class into three divisions.

## (§ 67.) FIRST DIVISION.

The diphthong *ei* is in the imperfect and past participle changed into *ie*.

<i>Present Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Bleiben, to remain	ich blieb	geblieben.
Verbleiben, to continue	ich verblieb	verblieben.
Bescheiden, to direct	ich beschied	beschieden.
Gedeihen, to prosper	ich gedieh	gediehen.
Leihen, to lend	ich lieh	geliehen.
Meiden, } to avoid	ich mied	gemieden.
Vermeiden, }	ich vermied	vermieden.
Reiben, to rub	ich rieb	gerieben.
Preisen, to praise	ich pries	gepriesen.
Scheiden, to separate	ich schied	geschieden.
Scheinen, to shine	ich schien	geschieden.
Erscheinen, to appear	ich erschien	erschienen.
Schreien, to cry	ich schrie	geschrien.
Schreiben, to write	ich schrieb	geschrieben.
Speien, to spit	ich spie	gespien.
Schweigen, to be silent	ich schwieg	geschwiegen.
Steigen, to ascend	ich stieg	gestiegen.
Treiben, to drive	ich trieb	getrieben.

\* The student, being familiar with the simple irregular verbs, will also know how to conjugate their compounds. It is for this reason, that we shall mention only those compounds which are very common. Dots (thus —.....) denote regularity.

<b>Vertreiben</b> , to banish	ich vertrieb	vertrieben.
<b>Weisen</b> , to show	ich wies	gewiesen.
<b>Zeihen</b> , to accuse of	ich zieh	geziesen.
<b>Verzeihen</b> , to pardon	ich verzieh	verziehen.

(§ 68.) SECOND DIVISION.

Verbs terminating in *chen* and *ßen*, change in the imperfect and past participle, the diphthong *ei* simply into *i*.

<i>Present Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
<b>Bleichen</b> , } to grow	ich blich	gebleichen.
<b>Erbleichen</b> , } pale	ich erblich	erbleichen.
<b>Verbleichen</b> , to fade	ich verblich	verblichen.
<b>Gleichen</b> , to resemble	ich glich	geglichen.
<b>Vergleichen</b> , to compare	ich verglich	verglichen.
<b>Schleichen</b> , to sneak	ich schlich	geschlichen.
<b>Streichen</b> , to stroke	ich strich	gestrichen.
<b>Weichen</b> , to yield	ich wich	gewichen.
<b>Beißen</b> , to bite	ich biß	gebissen.
<b>Sich befleissen</b> , to apply one's self	ich befiß mich	beßissen.
<b>Reißen</b> , to tear	ich riß	gerissen.
<b>Schleißen</b> , to split, to slit	ich schliß	geschliffen.
<b>Spleißen</b> , to cleave	ich spliß	gespiffen.
<i>Exc.</i> <b>Heißen</b> , to bid	ich hieß	geheißen.

(§ 69.) THIRD DIVISION.

The following verbs double the consonant after *i*, and **Leiden** and **Schneiden** change *d* into *tt*.

<i>Present Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
<b>Gleiten</b> , to glide	ich glitt	geglitten.
<b>Greifen</b> , to grasp	ich griff	gegriffen.
<b>Reifen</b> , to chide	ich riff	geriffen.
<b>Kneifen</b> , to pinch	ich kniff	gekneiffen.
<b>Leiden</b> , to suffer	ich litt	gelitten.
<b>Pfeifen</b> , to whistle	ich pfiff	gepfiffen.
<b>Reiten</b> , to ride	ich ritt	geritten.
<b>Schleifen</b> , to grind	ich schliß	geschliffen.
<b>Schneiden</b> , to cut	ich schnitt	geschnitten.
<b>Schreiten</b> , to stride	ich schritt	geschritten.
<b>Streiten</b> , to contend	ich stritt	gestritten.

(§ 70.) SECOND CLASS.

The verbs of this class have the radical vowel *i* which in the imperfect indicative, with a few exceptions, is changed into *a*, and in the past participle into *u*, or *o*. All other forms are regular. According to the formation of the past participle, we have two divisions.

(§ 71.) FIRST DIVISION.

<i>Present Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Binden, to bind	ich band	gebunden.
Dingen, to bargain	ich dang	gedungen.
Bedingen, to stipulate	ich bedang	bedungen.
Dringen, to press	ich drang	gedrungen.
Finden, to find	ich fand	gefunden.
Sich befinden, to find one's self	ich befand (mich)	befunden.
Empfinden, to feel	ich empfand	empfunken.
Erfinden, to invent	ich erfand	erfunken.
Gelingen, <i>impers.</i> to succeed	es gelang (mir)	gelungen.
Mißlingen, <i>impers.</i> not to succeed	es mißlang (mir)	mißlungen.
Ringen, to wrestle	ich rang	gerungen.
Schinden, to flay	ich schund	geschunden.
Schlingen, to sling	ich schlang	geschlungen.
Verschlingen, to devour	ich verschlang	verschlungen.
Schwinden, to vanish	ich schwand	geschwunden.
Verschwinden, to disappear	ich verschwand	verschwunden.
Schwingen, to swing	ich schwang	geschwungen.
Singen, to sing	ich sang	gesungen.
Sinken, to sink	ich sank	gesunken.
Springen, to spring	ich sprang	gesprungen.
Stinken, to stink	ich stank	gestunken.
Trinken, to drink	ich trank	getrunken.
Winden, to wind	ich wand	gewunden.
Zwingen, to force	ich zwang	gezwungen.
Exc. Sitzen, to sit	ich saß	gesessen.
Besitzen, to possess	ich besaß	befessen.

REMARK. — Besides *schund* we may also sometimes find in other verbs of this kind, the vowel *u* used in place of *a*. Thus,

for instance, of the verbs *dingen* and *bedingen*, both the imperfects, *bang*, *bedang* and *dung*, *bedung* are in use; or sometimes the vowel *ü* may be used in the subjunctive, whilst *a* is retained in the indicative.

(§ 72.) SECOND DIVISION.

When the vowel *i* is followed by two consonants of the same kind, the past participle takes *o* instead of *u*.

<i>Present Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
<i>Beginnen</i> , to begin	ich begann	begonnen.
<i>Entrinnen</i> , to escape	ich entrann	entronnen.
<i>Gewinnen</i> , to gain	ich gewann	gewonnen.
<i>Glimmen</i> , to glimmer	ich glomm or reg.	geglossen.
<i>Klimmen</i> , to climb	ich flomm or reg.	geflossen.
<i>Rinnen</i> , to drop (of fluids)	ich rann	geronnen.
<i>Schwimmen</i> , to swim	ich schwamm	geschwommen.
<i>Sinnen</i> , to think	ich sann	gesonnen.
<i>Sich besinnen</i> , to recollect	ich besann (mich)	besonnen.
<i>Spinnen</i> , to spin	ich spann	gesponnen.
<i>Verwirren</i> , to confound	reg. or verworr	verworren.
<i>Exc. Bitten</i> , to request	ich bat	gebeten.

REMARK. — Besides *flomm*, *glomm* and *verworr* we may also find in some other verbs of this kind the vowel *o* used instead of *a*; or the vowel *ö* may be sometimes used in the subjunctive, although the vowel *a* be retained in the indicative.

(§ 73.) THIRD CLASS.

The verbs of this class change, in the imperfect tense as well as in the past participle, their radical vowels into *o*.

(§ 74.) FIRST DIVISION.

The verbs of this division have in their radical syllable the double vowel *ie*.

<i>Present Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
<i>Betrieden</i> ,* to deceive	ich betrog	betrogen.
<i>Biegen</i> , to bend	ich bog	gebogen.
<i>Bieten</i> , to bid	ich bot	geboten.

\* Or *betrügen*.

Fliegen, to fly	ich flog	geflogen.
Fliehen, to flee	ich floh	geflohen.
Fließen, to flow	ich floß	geflossen.
Frieren, to freeze	ich fror	gefroren.
Gebieten, to command	ich gebot	geboten.
Genießen, to enjoy	ich genoss	genossen.
Gießen, to pour	ich goß	gegossen.
Kleben, to cleave	ich klob	gekloben.
Kriechen, to creep	ich kroch	getrochen.
Riechen, to smell	ich roch	gerochen.
Schieben, to push	ich schob	geschoben.
Schießen, to shoot	ich schoss	geschossen.
Schließen, to shut	ich schloß	geschlossen.
Stieben, to boil	ich stob	gestoben.
Trogen,* to deceive	ich trog	getrogen.
Verbieten, to forbid	ich verbot	verbotten.
Verdrießen, <i>impers.</i> to offend	es verdroß	verdroffen.
Verlieren, to lose	ich verlor	verloren.
Wiegen, to weigh	ich wog	gewogen.
Ziehen, to draw	ich zog	gezogen.
Exc. Liegen, to lie down	ich lag	gelegen.

REMARK.—In the second person of the imperative, and in the second and third persons singular of the present tense, we sometimes find the diphthong *eu* in place of *ie*; as, *du fliegst, er fliegt, or du fleugst er fleugt*; imperative, *fliege or fleug*.

### (§ 75.) SECOND DIVISION.

The verbs of this division have different radical vowels.

<i>Present Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Erwägen, to consider	ich erwog	erwogen or reg.
Erfüren, to choose	ich erfor	erforen.
Erlöschen, to become extinct	ich erlosch	erloschen.
Verlöschen, to be extinguished	ich verlosch or reg.	verloschen.
Gähren, to ferment	reg. or gohr	gegohren.
Lügen, to tell a lie	ich log	gelogen.
Saufen, to drink (like beasts)	ich soff	gesoffen.
Saugen, to suck	ich sog or reg.	gesogen.
Schnauben, to pant	ich schnob or reg.	reg. or geschno- ben.

\* Or trügen.

<b>Rächen</b> , to avenge	reg. or roch	reg. or gerochen.
<b>Schallen</b> , to sound	ich scholl or reg.	.....
<b>Erschallen</b> , to resound	ich erscholl or reg.	erschollen.
<b>Schwären</b> , to fester	ich schwor	geschworen.
<b>Schwören</b> , to swear	ich schwor	geschworen.
<b>Schrauben</b> , to screw	ich schrob or reg.	geschroben or reg.

**REMARK.**—The verb *saufen* most commonly changes, in the second and third persons of the present indicative, the diphthong *au* into *än*; as, *du säußt, er säuft*; and in the same persons of the same mood we rather say *du erlöschest, er erlöschet*, than *du erlöschst, er erlöschet*; and so likewise in the second person singular of the imperative mood, we rather say *erlösch* than *erlöche*; whilst the simple verb *löschen*, as well as other compounds, commonly form those persons in a regular manner.

(§ 76.) FOURTH CLASS.

The verbs of this class, which have the radical vowel *e*, may be viewed under three divisions.

(§ 77.) FIRST DIVISION.

With a few exceptions, the verbs of this division change, in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative, and in the second person of the imperative mood, their radical vowel *e* into *i* (sometimes into *ie*). In the imperfect tense, they change it into *a*, and in the past participle into *o*.

*Pres. Infinit. Pres. Indic. Imperf. Indic. Imp've. Past Partic.*  
2d & 3d pers. sing.

<b>Befehlen</b> , to command	du befehlst, er befiehlt	ich befahl	befiehl	befohlen.
<b>Bestechen</b> , to bribe	du bestichst, er besticht	ich bestach	bestich	bestochen.
<b>Bergen</b> , to conceal	du birgst, er birgt	ich barg	birg	geborgen.
<b>Bersten</b> , to burst	du birstest, er birstet or birst	ich barst	birst	geborsten.
<b>Brechen</b> , to break	du brichst, er bricht	ich brach	brich	gebrochen.
<b>Dreschen</b> , to thresh	du drischest, er drischt	ich drasch	drisch	gedroschen.

<b>Empfehlen</b> , to recommend	du empfiehlst, er empfiehlt	ich empfahl	empfehl	empfohlen.
<b>Erschrecken</b> , to be frightened	du erschrickst, er erschrickt	ich erschrack	erschrick	erschrocken.
<b>Gelten</b> , to be worth	du giltst, er gilt	ich galt	gilt	gegolten.
<b>Helfen</b> , to help	du hilfst, er hilft	ich half	hilf	geholfen.
<b>Nehmen</b> , to take	du nimmst, er nimmt	ich nahm	nimm	genommen.
<b>Schelten</b> , to scold	du schiltst, er schilt	ich schalt	schilt	gescholten.
<b>Sprechen</b> , to speak	du sprichst, er spricht	ich sprach	sprich	gesprochen.
<b>Stechen</b> , to sting	du stichst, er sticht	ich stach	stich	gestochen.
<b>Stechen</b> , to stick	.....	reg. or stach	.....	.....
<b>Stehlen</b> , to steal	du stiehst, er stiehlt	ich stahl	stiehl	gestohlen.
<b>Sterben</b> , to die	du stirbst, er stirbt	ich starb	stirb	gestorben.
<b>Treffen</b> , to hit	du triffst, er trifft	ich traf	triff	getroffen.
<b>Verbergen</b> , to conceal	du verbirgst, er verbirgt	ich verbarg	verbirg	verborgen.
<b>Verderben</b> , to perish	du verderbst, er verderbt	ich verderb	verdirb	verdorben.
<b>Werben</b> , to enrol	du wirbst, er wirbt	ich warb	.....	geworben.
<b>Werden</b> , to become	du wirst, er wird	ich ward	.....	geworden.
<b>Werfen</b> , to throw	du wirfst, er wirft	ich warf	wirf	geworfen.
So also :				
<b>Gebären</b> , to bring forth	du gebierst, er gebiert	ich gebar	gebier	geboren.

**REMARK.** — Instead of *a*, in the imperfect indicative of this division, we sometimes find *o* together with the corresponding vowel *ö* in the subjunctive. Thus, instead of saying *ich erschrack*, *Subj. ich erschrücke*, we might also say : *ich erschrock*, *Subj. ich*

**erschreie.** The form **drösch**, with its subjunctive **dröschē**, occurs more frequently than **drasch** and **dräschē**.

Moreover, in the imperfect of the subjunctive, besides the vowel **ä**, we also sometimes find the vowel **ü**; as, **ich wärfe** or **würfe**; **verdarbe** or **verdürbe**; **stärbe** or **stürbe**.

(§ 78.) SECOND DIVISION.

This division differs from the preceding only in the vowel **o** in the Imperfect.

*Pres. Infinit. Pres. Indic. Imperf. Indic. Imp'v. Past Partic.*  
2d & 3d pers. sing.

<b>Bewegen</b> , to induce	.....	<b>ich bewog</b>	.....	<b>bewogen</b> .
<b>Fechten</b> , to fight	<b>du fichtst,</b> <b>er ficht</b>	<b>ich focht</b>	<b>ficht</b>	<b>gefochten</b> .
<b>Flechten</b> , to twist	<b>du flichtst,</b> <b>er flicht</b>	<b>ich flocht</b>	<b>flicht</b>	<b>geflochten</b> .
<b>Heben</b> , to heave	.....	<b>ich hob</b> or <b>hub</b>	.....	<b>gehoben</b> .
<b>Melken</b> , to milk	<b>du milchst, er</b> <b>milcht</b> or reg.	<b>ich molst</b> or reg.	<b>milst</b>	<b>gemolken</b> or reg.
<b>Pflegen</b> , to cherish	.....	reg. or <b>pflog</b>	.....	<b>gepflogen</b> .
<b>Quellen</b> , to spring forth (of fluids)	<b>du quillst,</b> <b>er quillt</b>	<b>ich quoll</b>	<b>quill</b>	<b>gequollen</b> .
<b>Scheren</b> , to shear	<b>du schierst,</b> <b>er schiert</b>	<b>ich schor</b>	<b>schier</b>	<b>geschoren</b> .
<b>Schmelzen</b> , to melt	<b>du schmilzest,</b> <b>er schmilzet</b>	<b>ich schmolz</b>	<b>schmilz</b>	<b>geschmolzen</b> .
<b>Schwellen</b> , to swell	<b>du schwillst,</b> <b>er schwillt</b>	<b>ich schwoll</b>	<b>schwill</b>	<b>geschwollen</b> .
<b>Weben</b> , to weave	.....	<b>ich wob</b> or reg.	.....	<b>gewoben</b> .

(§ 79.) THIRD DIVISION.

The conjugation of this division differs from the conjugation of the first division in the past participle, which is formed by prefixing to the present infinitive the syllable **ge**, unless the verb

should commence with the particles *ge*, *be*, *wer*, &c.; in this case, the past participle is the same as the present infinitive.

<i>Pres. Infinit.</i>	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	<i>Imp've.</i>	<i>Past Partic.</i>
	<i>2d &amp; 3d pers. sing.</i>			
Essen, to eat	du issest, er isset or ißt	ich aß	iß	gegessen.
Fressen, to devour	du frissest, er frisset or frißt	ich fraß	friß	gefressen.
Geben, to give	du giebst, er giebt	ich gab	gieb	gegeben.
Genesen, to recover	.....	ich genaß	.....	genesen.
Geschehen, <i>impers.</i> to happen	es geschieht	es geschah	.....	geschehen.
Lesen, to read	du liesest, er lieset or liest	ich las	ließ	gelesen.
Messen, to measure	du missest, er misset or mißt	ich maß	miß	gemessen.
Sehen, to see	du siehst, er sieht	ich sah	sieh	gesehen.
Treten, to tread	du trittst, er tritt	ich trat	tritt	getreten.
Bergeffen, to forget	du vergissest, er vergisset or vergißt	ich vergaß	vergiß	vergeffen.

REMARK. — In the second person singular of the imperative, the verbs of the three divisions of this class, also admit the regular form which is commonly followed by the pronoun, whilst the irregular form is generally used without the pronoun; as, *hülfe* or *helfe* du; *befiehl* or *befehle* du.

### (§ 80.) FIFTH CLASS.

With few exceptions, the verbs of this class change, in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative, their radical vowel *a* into *ä*, and in the imperfect tense either into *u* or into *ie*. The past participle is formed from the present infinitive by prefixing the syllable *ge*, whenever it is admissible. According to the formation of the imperfect tense we have two divisions.

(§ 81.) FIRST DIVISION.

<i>Pres. Infinit.</i>	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Partic.</i>
	<i>2d &amp; 3d pers. sing.</i>		
Baden, to back	du bädest, er bädet	ich buet or reg.	gebädet.
	or reg.		
Fahren, to ride	du fährst, er fährt	ich fuhr	gefahren.
Fragen, to ask	du fragst, er fragt	ich frug or reg.	.....
	or reg.		
Graben, to dig	du gräbst, er gräbt	ich grub	gegraben.
Begraben, to bury	du begräbst, er be- gräbt	begrub	begraben.
Jagen, to chase	.....	reg. or jug	gejagen or reg.
Mahlen, to grind	.....	.....	gemahlen.
Schaffen, to create	.....	ich schuf	geschaffen.
Schlagen, to strike	du schlägst, er schlägt	ich schlug	geschlagen.
Wachsen, to grow	du wachsest, er wächst	ich wuchs	gewachsen.
Waschen, to wash	du wäschest, er wäscht	ich wusch	gewaschen.
Laden, to load	reg. or du lädest, er lädet	ich lud	geladen.
Tragen, to carry	du trägst, er trägt	ich trug	getragen.

(§ 82.) SECOND DIVISION.

<i>Pres. Infinit.</i>	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Partic.</i>
	<i>2d &amp; 3d pers. sing.</i>		
Blasen, to blow	du bläsest, er bläset or bläst	ich blies	geblasen.
Braten, to roast	du brätst, er brät,	ich briet	gebraten.
Fallen, to fall	du fällst, er fällt	ich fiel	gefallen.
Gefallen, to please	du gefällst, er ge- fällt	ich gefiel	gefallen.
Gerathen, to hit upon	du geräthst, er ge- rath	ich gerieth	gerathen.
Halten, to hold	du hältst, er hält	ich hielt	gehalten.
Lassen, to let or order	du lässest, er lasset or läßt	ich ließ	gelassen.
Missfallen, to dis- please	du mißfällst, er mißfällt	ich mißfiel	mißfallen.

Rathen, to advise	du räthst, er räth	ich rieth	gerathen.
Schlafen, to sleep	du schläfst, er schläft	ich schlief	geschlafen.
Verlassen, to leave	du verlässest, er verläßt	ich verließ	verlassen.

The three following verbs take simply *i* in the imperfect tense :

Empfangen, to receive	du empfängst, er empfängt	ich empfing	empfangen.
Hängen, to hang	du hängst, er hängt	ich hing	gehangen.
Fangen, to catch	du fängst, er fängt	ich fing	gefangen.

The next four verbs likewise change in the imperfect their radical vowels into *ie*, and form their past participle by prefixing the syllable *ge* to the infinitive.

Hauen, to hew	.....	hieb	gehauen.
Laufen, to run	du läufst, er läuft or reg.	lief	gelaufen.
Rufen, to call	.....	rief	gerufen.
Stoßen, to push	du stoßest, er stößt or stößt	stieß	gestoßen.

### (§ 83.) SIXTH CLASS.

The verbs of this class differ from all the preceding classes by terminating in the imperfect in *te*, and in the past participle in *t*. We shall view them under two divisions.

### (§ 84.) FIRST DIVISION.

The verbs of this division are irregular in the past participle and in the imperfect indicative. The imperfect subjunctive is regular, with the exception of the last two verbs.

<i>Present Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>		<i>Past Partic.</i>
	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	
Brennen, to burn	ich brannte	ich brennete	gebrannt.
Kennen, to know	ich kannte	ich kennete	gekannt.
Nennen, to name	ich nannte	ich nennete	genannt.
Rennen, to run	ich rannte or reg.	ich rennete	gerannt.
Senden, to send	ich sandte	ich sendete	gesandt.
Wenden, to turn	ich wandte or reg.	ich wendete	gewandt.
Denken, to think	ich dachte	ich dächte	gedacht.
Bringen, to bring	ich brachte	ich brächte	gebracht.

(§ 85.) SECOND DIVISION.

Besides the imperfect and past participle, the verbs of this division are also irregular in the singular number of the present indicative. According to § 65. 7. the present infinitive of these verbs is used in place of the past participle when another infinitive precedes.

<i>Present Infinitive.</i>	<i>Pres. Indic. sing.</i>	<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
<b>Wollen</b> , to wish	ich will, du willst, er will	.....	.....
<b>Müssen</b> , to be obliged	ich muß, du mußt, er muß	ich mußte	gemußt.
<b>Dürfen</b> , to be permitted	ich darf, du darfst, er darf	ich durfte or durfte	gedurft or gedorft.
<b>Mögen</b> , to be willing	ich mag, du magst, er mag	ich mochte	gemocht.
<b>Können</b> , to be able	ich kann, du kannst, er kann	ich konnte	gekonnt.
<b>Sollen</b> , to be obliged	ich soll, du sollst, er soll	.....	.....
<b>Wissen</b> , to know	ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß	ich wußte	gewußt.

The few following verbs cannot be brought under any particular class.

<i>Present Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
<b>Gehe</b> n, to go	ich ging	gegangen.
<b>Stehe</b> n, to stand	ich stand	gestanden.
<b>Verstehe</b> n, to understand	ich verstand	verstanden.
<b>Thun</b> , to do	ich that	gethan.
<b>Komme</b> n, to come	ich kam	gekommen.

**Sein**, to be and **Haben**, to have. See the auxiliary verbs.

(§ 86.) *Final Remarks.*

1. Several verbs are irregular only when they are used as intransitive, and regular, when they are used as transitive verbs; as,

*Irregular.*

**Bleichen**, to become pale.  
**Erschrecken**, to be frightened.

9\*

*Regular.*

**Bleichen**, to render pale.  
**Erschrecken**, to frighten.

**Schmelzen**, to be melting.

**Schweigen**, to be silent.

**Schwellen**, to be swelling.

**Stecken**, to be sticking.

**Verderben**, to perish.

**Verlöschen**, to become extinguished.

**Weichen**, to yield.

**Schmelzen**, to make something melt.

**Schweigen**, to silence.

**Schwellen**, to swell (in an active sense).

**Stecken**, to stick, *i. e.* to put into.

**Verderben**, to ruin, destroy.

**Verlöschen**, to extinguish.

**Weichen**, to soften.

2. Sometimes, the same verb may be both regular and irregular, according to its different significations; as, **bewegen**, to move, *i. e.* to put into motion, *reg.*; but **bewegen**, to induce, *irr.*; **wiegen**, to rock, *reg.*, and **wiegen**, to weigh, *irr.*

3. Some irregular intransitive verbs become regular transitive verbs by changing their radical vowels; as,

#### *Irregular.*

**Ersaufen**, to be drowned.

**Fallen**, to fall.

**Hängen**, to be suspended.

**Liegen**, to lie down.

**Saugen**, to suck.

**Schwimmen**, to swim.

**Sinken**, to sink.

**Springen**, to spring.

**Trinken**, to drink.

**Sitzen**, to sit down.

#### *Regular.*

**Ersäufen**, to drown.

**Fällen**, to fell.

**Hängen**, to suspend.

**Legen**, to lay, to place.

**Säugen**, to suckle.

**Schwemmen**, to wash away.

**Senken**, to sink, *i. e.* to let down.

**Sprengen**, to sprinkle.

**Tränken**, to give to drink.

**Setzen**, to place.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### (§ 87.) OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs have no general distinguishing termination, as will appear from the following rules:

I. The absolute form of adjectives, in the positive and comparative degrees, may always be used adverbially, unless their meaning should prevent it; as, *Mein Bruder schreibt schön*,

**aber meine Schwester schreibt schöner,** My brother writes beautifully, but my sister writes more beautifully.

From an adjective in the superlative degree, an adverb is formed by placing **am** before its absolute form, and by adding the termination **en** to it; as, **Mein Better schreibt am schönsten,** My cousin writes the most beautifully. Instead of **am**, **zum** or **aufs** is also used. After **zum**, which is the same as **zu dem**, the adjective has the termination **en**; as, **zum wenigsten**, at least; but after **aufs**, a contraction of **auf** and **das**, the adjective terminates in **e**, because it is the accusative of the second declension (§ 42.) governed by the preposition **auf**; as, **aufs beste**, best.

Adverbial terms with **am**, always imply a comparison; whilst those with **aufs** or **zum** simply qualify something in an absolute manner. Thus, by saying: **sie tanzte am schönsten**, we signify that she danced better than any other person; but **sie tanzte aufs schönste**, simply denotes that she danced in a most beautiful manner.

The absolute form of the superlative degree is very seldom used adverbially, and chiefly only in the following words:

**Höchst**, most; **äußerst**, extremely; **freundlichst**, in a most friendly manner; **höflichst**, most politely; **gütigst**, most kindly; **gehorsamst**, most obediently; **gnädigst** or **huldreichst**, most graciously; **unterthänigst**, most respectfully; **verbindlichst**, most obligingly; **längst**, long since; **jüngst**, lately; **balbigst**, very soon; **anderst**, otherwise.

II. Besides the adverbial forms of adjectives, there are many other kinds of adverbs,\* which are either primitives, derivatives or compounds.

(§ 88.) 1. *Primitives*: **heute**, to-day; **morgen**, to-morrow; **oft**, often; **selten**, seldom; **nun**, now; **bald**, soon; **schon**, already; **sehr**, very; **immer**, always; **nie**, never; **noch**, yet; **gern** or **gerne**, willingly; **da**, there; **unten**, below; **hinten**, behind; **hin und her**, to and fro; **auf und ab**, up and down; **hier**, here; **ja**, yes; **nicht**, not; **nein**, no; **wo**, where; **kaum**, scarcely; **wohl**, well; &c.

---

\* Denoting time, place, quantity, affirmation, negation, doubt, &c.

## REMARKS.

1. *Wohl*, well, is particularly used, when we speak of the state of health; as, *Ich befinde mich sehr wohl*, I feel very well. In other cases, instead of *wohl*, *gut* is frequently used; as, *Er schreibt gut*, He writes well. *Wohl* may also signify, *perhaps, probably, about, even, nearly, indeed, plainly*; as, *Du glaubst wohl*, You perhaps think; *Ich sah ihn wohl hundertmal*, I saw him nearly a hundred times; *Er hat wohl Geld*; *aber, &c.*, He has money indeed; but, &c.; *Ich sehe es wohl*, I see it plainly.

2. *Doch*, after an imperative, corresponds to the English *pray*; as, *Thun Sie es doch*, Pray, do it. — In a subsequent sentence, or in an opposition, it generally signifies, *still, notwithstanding, anyhow*; as, *Obgleich er nicht reich ist, so thut er doch viel Gutes*, Although he is not rich, still he does much good. — Sometimes it denotes aversion or indignation; as, *Was wollen Sie doch?* What do you want then? In common conversation, particularly after a negative, it is sometimes used instead of *ja*, yes.

3. *Nicht*, not, is sometimes inserted in German, whilst it is omitted in English; as, *Es sind vier Jahre, seitdem ich ihn nicht gesehen habe*, It is four years since I have (not) seen him; *Wie schön war es nicht!*\* How beautiful was it (not)!

4. *Mitten*, before the prepositions *unter*, *auf*, and *in*, corresponds to the English, *in the midst of* or *in the middle of*; as, *mitten auf der Straße*, in the middle of the street.

5. When the adverbial forms *gern* or *gerne*, willingly; *lieber*, more willingly; *am liebsten*, most willingly, qualify a verb, they convey the idea of the English terms, *to be fond of* or *to like*; *to be more fond of* or *prefer*; and *to be most fond of*; as, *Ich trinke gerne Chocolate*, I am fond of chocolate, or, I like to drink chocolate; *Ich trinke lieber Thee*, I am more fond of tea, or, I would rather drink tea, or, I prefer tea; *Ich trinke am liebsten Kaffee*, I am most fond of coffee.

(§ 89.) 2. *Derivatives*. Several adverbs are formed from nouns and adjectives by adding the letter *s*;† as,

---

\* Originally perhaps the same as: *Wie schön war es! Nicht?*

† The letter *s* was originally the characteristic mark of the genitive singular.

*Nouns.*

der Anfang, beginning ;  
 der Morgen, morning ;  
 der Abend, evening ;  
 die Nacht, night ;  
 der Tag, day ;  
 der Mittag, noon ;  
 der Vormittag, forenoon ;  
 der Nachmittag, afternoon ;  
 das Jahr, year ;  
 der Monat, month ;  
 der Flug, flight ;  
 der Spornstreich, stroke of the  
 spur ;  
 die Seite, side ;

*Adverbs.*

anfangs or des Anfangs, in  
 the beginning.  
 morgens or des Morgens, in  
 the morning.  
 abends or des Abends, in the  
 evening.  
 nachts or des Nachts,\* at night.  
 mittenachts or des Mitter-  
 nachts, at midnight.  
 tags or des Tags, in the day.  
 mittags or des Mittags, at  
 noon.  
 vormittags or des Vormittags,  
 in the forenoon.  
 nachmittags or des Nachmit-  
 tags, in the afternoon.  
 des Jahrs, in a year.  
 des Monats, in a month.  
 flugs, swiftly.  
 spornstreichs, in haste.  
 dießseits, on this side.

*Adjectives.*

eilend, hastening ;  
 ander, other ;  
 recht, right ;  
 links, left ;  
 bereit, ready ;  
 besonder, particular ;  
 unversehen, unexpected ;  
 stet, constant ;  
 zusehend, looking at ;  
 durchgehend, passing through ;

*Adverbs.*

eilends, hastily.  
 anders, otherwise.  
 rechts, to the right.  
 links, to the left.  
 bereits, already.  
 besonders, particularly.  
 unversehens, unexpectedly.  
 stets, constantly.  
 zusehends, visibly.  
 durchgehends, throughout.

Some numerals become adverbs by the addition of *ens* or *tenß* ; as, *erstens*, in the first place ; *zweitens*, secondly ; &c.

---

\* The article here corresponds with the termination and not with the gender of the noun.

So also we say: *bestens*, in the best manner; *meistens*, mostly; *ehestens*, by the first opportunity; *höchstens*, at most; *übrigens*, as for the rest; *lestens*, lastly; *einstens*, once; *nächstens*, next time; *wenigstens*, at least.

The syllable *lich*, commonly denotes an adjective; but the following words are used only adverbially: *freilich*, indeed; *wahrlich*, truly; *gütlich*, kindly; *fürzlich*, shortly; *erstlich*, in the first place.

(§ 90.) 3. *Compounds*. Compound adverbs may consist of any two words; as, *durchaus* (two prep.), throughout; *dorthin* (two adverbs), thither; *scherzweise* (two nouns), by way of a joke; *vorgestern* (prep. and adverb), day before yesterday; *meinerseits* (pron. and noun), as for my part; &c. Some, on account of their frequent use, deserve particular notice. They are those formed by joining prepositions to the adverbs *hie* or *hier*, here; *hin* and *her*, to and fro; *da*, there; *wo*, where (or *dar* and *wor* when the following preposition commences with a vowel or *n*). Thus, prepositions are compounded:

a. With *da* or *dar*; as,

*dabei*, thereby, by it, with it.  
*dadurch*, thereby, by it or that.  
*dagegen*, against it or that.  
*dahinter*, behind it or that.  
*damit*, therewith, with that or it, or by it.  
*darin*, therein, in it, within.  
*darein*, thereinto, into it or that.  
*darum*, therefore, for it or that.  
*darüber*, on that account, at it.  
*darunter*, thereunder, under it or that.

*daneben*, near that or it, next to it.  
*baran*, thereon, on it or that.  
*darauf*, thereupon, upon it or that.  
*daraus*, therefrom, from it or that.  
*davon*, thereof, of that or it.  
*davor*, before that or it.  
*dawider*, against that or it.  
*dazu*, thereto, for that or it.  
*dazwischen*, between, amidst that.

b. With *wo* or *wor*; as,

*warum* (instead of *worum*), why.  
*wobei*, whereby, whereat.  
*wodurch*, through or by which.  
*wofür*, wherefore, for which.

*wogegen*, against which.  
*womit*, wherewith, with which.  
*woran*, whereon, on which.  
*worauf*, whereupon, upon which.  
*woraus*, from what or which.

**worin**, wherein, in which.  
**worein**, whereinto.  
**wonach** or **wornach**, according to which.  
**worüber**, whereupon, upon which.

**worunter**, under which, among which.  
**wovon**, whereof, of which, of what.  
**wovor**, before which.  
**wozu**, whereto, to which, &c.

c. With **hier** or **hie** ; as,

**hieran**, hercon, on this or it.  
**hierauf**, hereupon, upon this or it.  
**hieraus**, herefrom, from this.  
**hierbei**, hereby, by this.  
**hierin**, herein, in this.

**hiermit**, herewith, with this.  
**hiernach**, after this, according to this.  
**hierüber**, over or of this.  
**hiervon**, hereof, of this.  
**hierzu**, for this, &c.

d. With **hin** and **her**, to and fro ; as,

**hinunter** or **herunter**, downwards.  
**hindurch**, through.

**hinauf** or **herauf**, upwards.  
**heraus**, out, &c.

(§ 91.) REMARKS.

1. The adverbs compounded with **hin** and **her**, have the force of prepositions ; because in connexion with a noun, they govern the accusative. As for their signification, they both denote a direction ; but those with **her** rather express motion towards the place where the person is who speaks, and those with **hin** rather towards some other place ; as,

**Er stieg den Berg hinan**, He ascended the mountain.  
**Er kam die Treppe herunter**, He came down stairs.

2. In reference to persons, pronouns and not adverbs must be used. Thus, we should say : **dieser Mann, für welchen** or **für den**, and not **wofür**, this man, for whom.

3. Substantives with prepositions are also very frequently used adverbially. Thus, we may say : **Er hörte aufmerksam zu**, or **Er hörte mit Aufmerksamkeit zu**, He listened attentively.

## CHAPTER IX.

## (§ 92.) OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions serve to connect words and sentences ; and, according to the relation of the connected parts, they may be divided into copulative, conditional, disjunctive, causative, conclusive, concessive, &c.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. The conjunctions **aber**, **allein**, **sondern**, which all signify *but*, differ in their use. Both **aber** and **allein** denote a limitation and modification of an antecedent part, and they are used indiscriminately, except that **aber** may be placed either at the beginning of a sentence or phrase, or after one or several words ; whilst **allein** always stands first ; as, **Er ist ein edler Mann, aber (or allein) er ist arm**, or, **er ist aber arm**, He is a noble man, but he is poor. — **Sondern**, denoting a contradiction, is only used after a negative, and always ranks first in the sentence or phrase to which it belongs ; as, **Er ist nicht gelehrt, sondern unwissend**, He is not learned, but ignorant.

2. The conjunctions **wenn**, **als**, **da**, **wann**, all denote time, but they differ in their use. **Wenn** refers to time only in a general manner, and commonly corresponds to the English *if* : **da** also denotes time in a general manner, but commonly implies a cause : **als** refers to some particular time, and commonly only to the past : **wann** denotes time in a general manner, but refers rather to the future than the past ; it is principally used in asking the question, when ? Examples :

**Wenn der Feind kam, flüchteten sie**, When, *i. e.* whenever the enemy came, they fled ; **Als der Feind kam, flüchteten sie**, When (*i. e.* at that particular time, when) the enemy came, they fled ; **Da ich ein Kind war, redete ich wie ein Kind**, When I was a child, I talked like a child ; **Wann speisen Sie ?** When do you dine ?

# CHAPTER X.

## (§ 93.) OF PREPOSITIONS.

We shall here simply enumerate the principal prepositions; the particular rules and remarks will be given in syntax.

### 1. *Prepositions governing the Genitive.*

statt or anstatt, instead of.	laut, according to.
diesseit, on this side of.	vermöge, by virtue of.
jenseit, on the other side of.	mittels, by means of.
außerhalb, out of.	um — willen, for the sake of.
innerhalb, within.	ungeachtet, notwithstanding.
oberhalb, above.	unweit, not far from.
unterhalb, below.	während, during.
kraft, by dint of.	wegen, on account of.

### 2. *Prepositions governing the Dative.*

aus, out of.	nächst, next to, after.
außer, without, besides.	nebst or sammt, together with.
bei, by, with, at.	seit, since.
mit, with.	von, of, from, by.
nach, after, according.	zu, to, at, by, on.

### 3. *Prepositions governing the Accusative.*

durch, through, by.	ohne or sonder, without.
für, for.	um, around, about, for.
gegen or gen, towards, against.	wider, against, in opposition.

### 4. *Prepositions governing the Accusative or Dative, according as they denote motion to a place, or motion or rest in a place.*

an, on, at, in.	über, over, above.
auf, upon.	unter, under.
hinter, behind.	vor, before.
in, in.	zwischen, between.

## CHAPTER XI.

## (§ 94.) OF INTERJECTIONS.

ach! ah! ah!  
 leider! alas!  
 ei! heigh!  
 o! oh! oh!  
 o wehe! woe!

mohlan! well then!  
 halt! halt! or stop!  
 willkommen! welcome!  
 holla! he! holla!  
 still! hush!

REMARK. — Real interjections may be connected with any case; as, *Ach! der Unglückliche!* or, *Ach! des Unglücklichen!* Alas! the unhappy man! But commonly the nominative or vocative is used after them; as, *Ach! lieber Freund!* Ah! dear friend! *O! theuerster Vater!* O! dearest father! — *Wohl!* happiness! *Heil!* hail! and *Wehe!* woe! which cannot properly be called interjections, govern the dative; as, *Wohl dem, der Gott liebt!* Happy he, who loves God! *Heil dem Könige,* Hail to the king!

## CHAPTER XII.

## (§ 95.) OF THE FORMATION OF WORDS.

The radical part of every word is undoubtedly a monosyllable, which has gradually received prefixes and affixes. Some of the additional syllables may have been added merely for the sake of euphony; but most of them certainly had a distinct meaning. In many syllables the signification can yet be traced. Thus, *bar*, a common affix to adjectives, seems to correspond to the English verb *bear*; as, *fruchtbar*, fruitbearing or fruitful: *heit*, a termination which frequently occurs in nouns, is probably the same as the English *head*; as, *Gottheit*, godhead: and the syllable *lein* seems to be an abbreviation of *klein*, small; hence, *Söhnlein*, signifies a little son. According to the increase of syllables, or according to the variety of the ideas to be conveyed, and sometimes for the sake of euphony, the letters constituting the radical part have frequently undergone considerable changes. Thus, the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and the diphthong

**au**, not only have often taken the place of each other, but, instead of them, their corresponding vowels **ä**, **ö**, **ü**, **äu**, and even **e** and **i**, have frequently been substituted. The nouns and irregular verbs afford us many examples. Thus, we say: **die Maus**, mouse; **Mäuse**, mice; **ich halte**, I hold; **du hältst**, thou holdest; **ich hielt**, I held; &c. So also similar consonants are frequently substituted for each other; for instance, **v** and **b**; **s** and **t**; **d** and **t**; &c. To trace the same root in different languages and dialects, it is necessary to divest a word of its prefixes and affixes, and sometimes to make substitutions in the radical part. Thus, omitting the termination **en** in the German verbs **singen**, **bringen**, **trinken**, **finden**, we have the English words "to sing, bring, drink, find." So likewise, dropping the terminations in the Latin verb **habere**, in the Spanish **habér**, in the German **haben**, in the English **have**, in the Italian **avere** and in the French **avoir**, we have left the monosyllables, **hab**, **hab**, **hav**, **av**, **av**. So also, dropping the prefixes and affixes of **comprehendere**, we have "hend," the English **hand**, and the German **hand**, so that the idea conveyed by **comprehendere**, is, to embrace in the hand an object that is before it. The student will at once see the similarity between the English **father**, the German **Vater**, the Latin **pater**, the Greek **πατήρ**, the Spanish **padre**, &c. So likewise, it is not difficult to trace the same root in the German **Wasser**, in the English **water**, in the Latin **vadum**; in the Greek **Βατος**, in the German **Bad**, in the English **bath**, &c.

Inquiries of this kind, interesting and useful as they would be, belong to the philosophy of the language rather than to grammar; and therefore we shall only show by examples, how words, as they now exist, are formed from each other, by derivation and composition.

## (§ 96.) A. Derivation of Words.

### I. Derivation of Nouns.

Nouns are derived:

1. From other nouns, principally by adding the syllables **chen**, **er**, **ei**, **heit**, **inn**, **lein**, **ling**, **niß**, **schaft**, **thum**, **ung**. Thus, from **Freund**, we form **Freundschaft**, friendship; from **Rönig**, king—**Rönigin**, queen; from **Tyrann**, tyrant—**Tyrannei**, tyranny. In derivatives, the radical vowels **a**, **o**, **u** are frequently changed

into the corresponding vowels *ä, ö, ü*; and the diphthong *au* into *äu*; as, *Bürger*, citizen—from *Burg*, *f.* castle; *Flüchtling*, fugitive—from *Flucht*, flight. Some few derivative nouns have the prefixes *ge* and *be*; as, *Gebatter*, godfather—from *Vater*, father. But most nouns with these prefixes are formed from verbs; as, *Geschenk*, present—from *schenten*, to present.

2. From adjectives, principally by adding the syllables *heit, keit, niß, e, er, thum*. Thus from *reich*, rich, we form—*Reichthum*, riches; from *frei*, free—*Freiheit*, freedom; from *finster*, dark—*Finsterniß*, darkness.

3. From verbs: either from the present infinitive, particularly in regular verbs; as, *Bauer*, husbandman—from *bauen*, to till: or from the imperfect, particularly in irregular verbs, and sometimes with a change of the radical vowels; as, *Klang*, sound—from *klang*, the imperfect of *klingen*; *Bruch*, rupture—from *brach*, the imperfect of *brechen*, to break: or sometimes from the present tense; as, *der Tritt*, step—from *tritt*, the third person singular of *treten*, to tread; *Flucht*, flight—from *fleucht*, an old form of *fliehen*, to fly. The affixes of nouns derived from verbs, are principally the following: *b, be, e, el, er, ei, icht, ling, niß, sal or sel, schaft, st, t, thum, ung*; as, *Wissenschaft*, science—from *wissen*, to know; *Liebling*, favourite—from *lieben*, to love; *Sprache*, language—from *sprach*, the imperfect of *sprechen*; *Hülfe*, assistance—from *half*, the imperfect of *helfen*, to help. Derivatives with the prefix *ge*, and the affixes *ei, icht, schaft, thum, ung*, have frequently a collective, and those with the prefix *ge* and the affix *ei*, a frequentative signification.

## II. Derivation of Adjectives.

Derivative adjectives are formed principally by the syllables *bar, en, haft* or *haftig, ig, isch, lich, sam, voll, los*. Thus from *Herr*, lord, we form *herrlich*, magnificent; from *Frucht*, fruit—*fruchtbar*, fruitful; from *sterben*, to die—*sterblich*, mortal; from *Schmerz*, pain—*schmerzlich*, painful. Some adjectives with the prefixes *ge* and *be*, and a few with *ver*, have a participial form; as, *berühmt*, distinguished; *beredt*, eloquent; *beherzt*, courageous.

## III. Derivation of Verbs.

Verbs are formed from other words by prefixes and affixes, sometimes with, and sometimes without a change of the radical vowel. Thus from *Farbe*, colour, we make *färben*, to colour;

from *Herr*, lord—*herrschen*, to rule; from *arm*, poor—*verarmen*, to become poor; from *sprechen*, to speak—*versprechen*, to promise. Some transitive verbs are formed from neuter verbs, simply by changing the radical vowel; as, *fällen*, to fell—from *fallen*, to fall.

4. Many particles also have been formed by derivation; as, *längs*, along—from *lang*; *vergebens*, in vain—from *vergeben*; *folglich*, consequently—from *folgen*; *mittelft*, by means of—from *Mittel*.

### (§ 97.) B. *Composition of Words.*

Any two terms conveying two distinct ideas, when united into one word constitute a compound. The first component qualifies the second, and has the main accent; as, *die Hausfrau*, the lady of the house. Compound nouns take the gender of the last component; as, *das Vaterland*, fatherland; *die Muttersprache*, mother-tongue. The terms which enter into composition sometimes remain unaltered; as, *das Rathhaus*, council-house. Sometimes the first component has the termination of the nominative plural, or of the genitive singular; as, *das Bürgerrecht*, citizenship; *die Gottesfurcht*, the fear of God. Even feminine nouns of the singular number, when holding the first place in the compound, frequently take the termination *s* or *en*; as, *der Geburtstag*,—from *Geburt*, *f.* and *Tag*, *m.*; *das Sonnenlicht*, sun-light—from *Sonne*, *f.* and *Licht*, *n.*

Sometimes words terminating in *e* or *en*, drop these terminations for the sake of euphony in compounds; as, *denkwürdig*, memorable—from *denken*, to think, and *würdig*, worthy; *Fechtboden*, fencing-school—from *fechten*, to fence, and *Boden*, floor.—When the compounds are to be altered, and when to be used unaltered, can be learned only by practice.

Commonly, when three or more words are joined, only the last two words are written as one, and each preceding one is separated from the following by a hyphen; as, *Ober-Schatzmeister*, lord high-treasurer; *Reichs-General-Feldmarschall*, Field-marshal general of the empire.—A hyphen is also used, when one or both of the components are foreign words; as, *das Intelligenz-Comptoir*, advertising office; *die Privat-Schule*,

private-school; *das Criminal-Gericht*, criminal court of justice: also when a proper name is compounded with another word; as, *Neu-York*; *Ober-Italien*. When it happens that two or more compound words have the second component the same, this component is frequently omitted in the first word or words, and expressed only in the last; and its omission in the preceding words is indicated by a hyphen; as, *der Auf- und Untergang der Sonne*, the rising and setting of the sun; *drei vier- und mehrfach*, threefold, fourfold, and manifold.

### *Examples of the Composition of Words.*

#### I. Compound Nouns.

1. Two or more nouns; as, *der Apfelbaum*, apple-tree; *die Herzensgüte*, goodness of heart; *der Sonnenschein*, sunshine; *der Ober-Postmeister*, postmaster-general.
2. An adjective and a noun; as, *die Großmuth*, generosity; *die Eigenliebe*, self-love.
3. A verb and a noun; as, *der Leuchthurm*, light-house; *die Klapperschlange*, rattle-snake.
4. A numeral and a noun; as, *das Siebengestirn*, the seven stars; *der Dreifuß*, the tripod.
5. A pronoun and a noun; as, *die Selbstprüfung*, self-examination.
6. A particle and a noun; as, *der Mittag*, noon.

#### II. Composition of Adjectives.

1. A noun and an adjective; as, *tugendreich*, rich in virtue; *gottesfürchtig*, fearing God. So likewise the present and past participles are compounded with nouns; as, *kriegsführend*, carrying on war; *blumenbegränzt*, ornamented with flowers.
2. Two adjectives; as, *dunkelblau*, dark-blue; *freiwillig*, spontaneous.
3. A verb and an adjective; as, *lobenswürdig*, praiseworthy; *denkwürdig*, memorable.

4. A numeral and an adjective; as, *vierseitig*, having four sides; *viereckig*, quadrangular.
5. A particle and an adjective; as, *anständig*, decent; *zufünftig*, future.

### III. Composition of Verbs.

Verbs are but rarely compounded with nouns and adjectives, but very frequently with particles. See § 63.

### IV. Composition of Particles.

Particles also are variously compounded; as, *dahin*, thither; *zuvor*, before; *mithin*, therefore; &c. See § 90.

## SYNTAX.

---

### (§ 98.) *Preliminary Remarks.*

SYNTAX treats of the formation and connexion of sentences. Whilst in etymology the words are treated of separately, in syntax they are to be viewed as parts of a sentence. In every language there are, properly speaking, only two kinds of sentences, *Absolute* and *Dependent*. Absolute sentences are those, which have a full meaning of themselves; as, "There is but one Washington;" "The Americans have many distinguished orators." Dependent sentences are those, which have not a full meaning of themselves, but require another sentence, to make the sense complete. Thus the dependent sentence: "When General Washington joined the army at Cambridge," receives a full meaning only by this subsequent sentence, "he found the British intrenched on Bunker's Hill." This division of sentences into Absolute and Dependent, natural and logical as it is in itself, is indicated, in the German language, by the collocation of words, as is evident from the following two rules:

I. In an Absolute sentence, the verb holds the second place, whilst the first place is held by any other part\* of the sentence, although commonly by the subject with its adjuncts. In compound tenses, the auxiliary alone holds the second place, whilst the other part of the verb is removed to the end of the sentence, unless for the sake of emphasis it should be placed nearer to the auxiliary, or even in the first place (compare § 127, 132, 133 and 134).

#### *Examples.*

Die Himmel rühmen des Ewigen Ehre.	The heavens declare the glory of the eternal God.
Das Glas ist von den Phöniziern erfunden worden.	Glass was invented by the Phœnicians.
Maria Stuart wird als eine Königin und Heldin sterben.	Mary Stuart will die as a queen and a heroine.

---

\* That is, by a noun or pronoun together with its adjuncts in any case; or by an adverb, infinitive, participle, or adjective predicate.

II. In Dependent sentences, which commence with a conjunction,\* or with a relative pronoun, or adverb,† the verb is commonly put at the end: in compound tenses, the whole verb is put at the end and the auxiliary last; but, for the sake of emphasis, the verb may be placed nearer to the subject, which commonly follows immediately after the conjunction, relative pronoun, or relative adverb.

### Examples.

Als Tarquinius aus Rom vertrieben worden war, ‡ wurde Brutus zum Consul erwählt.

Ich glaube, daß der Ewige mir die Kraft zu denken gegeben hat, damit ich nach den Gesetzen denke, nach welchen mir zu denken möglich ist.

After Tarquinius had been banished from Rome, Brutus was made Consul.

I think that the Eternal Being has given me the power of thought, in order that I may think according to those laws, by which it is possible for me to think.

For the particular rules of collocation, the student may refer to the second part of syntax. ||

Every sentence has a Subject and a Predicate. The Subject is that, of which something is affirmed, and it may be any part of speech; but commonly, it is either a noun or pronoun. The Predicate is that which is affirmed of the Subject, and is either a noun, pronoun, adjective, or past participle, together with a verb called the Copula, which serves to connect the Predicate with the Subject; or, the Predicate is a verb, either with an object or without one. Thus in the sentence: *Der Mensch ist sterblich*, Man is mortal—*der Mensch* is the Subject, *sterblich* is the Predicate, and *ist* is the Copula. In this sentence: *Die Sonne ist ein Himmelskörper*, The sun is a heavenly orb—*die Sonne* is the Subject, and *ein Himmelskörper* is the Predicate,

---

\* Referring to time or expressing a cause, condition, intention, design, concession, restriction, &c.

† Such as *wo*, where.

‡ In Latin: *Cum Tarquinius Roma expulsus esset*.

§ Why the verb ranks first in this absolute sentence will be seen in the Remark under § 134. 3.

|| I deem it both useful and interesting for the student, to learn the rules of the first and second parts of syntax alternately.

which is joined to the Subject by means of the verb *ist*. In the following sentence: *Das Kind schläft*, The child sleeps—*das Kind* is the Subject, and *schläft* is the Predicate. The verb *schläft* is equivalent to *ist schlafend*, is sleeping. This circumlocution, however, which is very common in English, is not in use in German. In this sentence: *Gott liebt uns*, God loves us—*Gott* is the Subject, and the rest is the Predicate.

The principal parts of every sentence therefore are, the Subject, the Copula, and the Predicate, which either refers simply to the subject or includes an object. The Subject as well as the Predicate may be each one or more in number, and either with or without qualifying terms: accordingly, the sentence is called simple, compound,\* or qualified.

The first part of syntax will treat of the government and agreement of words; and the second, of their collocation.

## FIRST PART OF SYNTAX.

### GOVERNMENT AND AGREEMENT OF WORDS.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### (§ 99.) NOMINATIVE.

1. The subject is always in the nominative; as, *Die Flüsse rollen*, The rivers roll; *die Berge donnern*, The mountains thunder.

2. When the predicate is a noun, pronoun, or adjective,† referring to the subject, the verb is said to have two nominatives; as, *Das Alter ist eine Krankheit*, Old age is a disease.

3. The verbs which in this manner connect two nominatives, are commonly *sein* and *werden*; but some neuter verbs also may serve the same purpose; as, *bleiben*, to remain; *scheinen* or *ers-*

\* A compound sentence is a contraction of two or more similar sentences, which we call co-ordinate. See § 139.

† Including the past participle.

**scheinen**, to appear; **heißen**, to be called; and also the passive voice of those verbs, which, when active, govern two accusatives; as, **nennen**, to name or call; **schelten**, to abuse or insult; **taufen**, to christen. Examples:

Alexander, König von Macedonien; hieß der Große.	Alexander, king of Macedon, was called the Great.
Meine Schwester blieb eine Wittwe.	My sister remained a widow.
Cicero wurde der Vater des Vaterlandes genannt.	Cicero was called the father of his country.
Er ist Fritz getauft worden.	He has been christened Frederick.

**REMARK.**—If the verb **werden** denotes a change or transmutation, instead of the second nominative, the preposition **zu** with the dative is used; as, **Das Blei wird nicht zu Golde**, Lead does not become gold. In English, the verbs to choose, to appoint, to denominate, to elect, to consider, and the like, are, in the active voice, construed with two accusatives, and in the passive, with two nominatives. But, in German, instead of the second accusative, or the second nominative, the corresponding verbs **erwählen**, **ernennen**, **machen**, to appoint, to choose, and others conveying the same idea, are connected with the preposition **zu** governing the dative; and **halten**, **ansehen**, to consider; **erklären**, to declare, and others of the same signification, are connected with the preposition **für** governing the accusative; as, **Numa Pompilius wurde zum zweiten Römischen Könige erwählt**, Numa Pompilius was elected the second king of Rome. **Alle Centurien riefen Cicero zum Prätor aus**, or in the passive voice, **Cicero wurde von allen Centurien zum Prätor ausgerufen**, Cicero was proclaimed prætor by all the centurions. **Demosthenes wird für einen sehr großen Redner gehalten**, Demosthenes is considered a very great orator.

As for other verbs, which in English are construed with two accusatives in the active voice, and with two nominatives in the passive, in German, the second accusative, as well as the second nominative, is commonly preceded by the particle **als** or **wie**; as, **Die Bescheidenheit wird als eine liebenswürdige Tugend geschätzt**, Modesty is esteemed an amiable virtue.

## CHAPTER II.

## OBLIQUE CASES.

If the predicate not only refers to the subject, but also includes an object, or if it relates to some circumstances, then we have oblique cases, which are governed either directly by the adjective or verb on which they depend, or by prepositions, or they stand absolutely.

A. *Oblique Cases governed by Adjectives.*

## (§ 100.) I. Adjectives governing the Genitive.

Bedürftig, in want of; beflissen, intent; benöthigt, in need of; bewußt, conscious; eingedenk, mindful; uneingedenk, unmindful; froh, glad; gewahr, aware; gewärtig, expecting; unfähig, incapable; gewohnt, accustomed; habhaft, in possession of; kundig, experienced in; unkundig, ignorant; ledig, free; los, rid; mächtig, potent; müde, tired; quitt, clear from; satt, satisfied or weary; schuldig, guilty; theilhaft or theilhaftig, participant; überdrüssig, disgusted; verblieben, deceased; verdächtig, suspected; verlustig, deprived; voll, full.

To these we may also add the participles of all verbs governing the genitive; as, verwiesen, banished.

*Examples.*

Dieser Mann ist der Unterstützung bedürftig.*	This man is in need of support.
Meine Schwester ist der Französischen Sprache mächtig.	My sister is familiar with the French language.
Du bist meiner Freundschaft würdig.	You are worthy of my friendship.
Er ist des Todes schuldig.	He is guilty of death.
Wir waren des Landes unkundig.	We were ignorant of the country.

---

\* Adjectives and past participles, when predicates, are used in their absolute form, in conformity with § 38, and here, as in other connexions, they are commonly preceded by the case which they directly govern. If they govern indirectly, i. e. by means of a preposition, they are frequently followed by oblique cases.

## REMARKS.

1. Some of the preceding adjectives govern also the accusative, and some are used with prepositions ; as, *Er ward seinen Bruder gewahr*, He observed his brother ; *Sie ist das Gehen nicht gewohnt*, She is not accustomed to walking ; *Ich bin das Reisen müde*, I am tired of walking ; *Sie sind zu dieser Sache nicht fähig*, They are not fit for this ; *Wir sind sehr froh über diese Sache*, We are very glad of this ; *Das Meer ist voll von Seeräubern*, The sea is full of pirates.

2. The substantive, depending upon *voll*, sometimes remains undeclined ; as, *voll Muth*, full of courage ; and to indicate the relation' of the genitive, *voll* very frequently takes *er*, without any reference to the gender or number of the substantive ; as, *voller Lärm*, full of noise ; *ein Leben voller Freuden*, a life full of joys.

3. In connexion with the comparative and superlative degrees, with numerals, and the indefinite terms, *viele*, many ; *wenige*, few ; and the like, the noun or pronoun denoting the whole, of which a part is taken, is sometimes put in the genitive ; but more frequently it is in the dative with one of the prepositions *aus*, *von*, or *unter*, before it. But here, the genitive, or the dative with its preposition, commonly follows after those terms on which it depends, except that the genitive of the personal pronouns precedes *viele*, *wenige*, and the cardinal numbers ; as, *Romulus war der erste der Römischen Könige* (or, *von den Römischen Königen*), Romulus was the first of the Roman kings ; *Drei meiner Brüder* (or, *von meinen Brüdern*) *sind todt*, Three of my brothers are dead ; *Es kamen unser sechs* (or, *sechs von uns*), There came six of us ; *Es sind unser wenige* (or, *wenige von uns*), There are few of us.

(§ 101.) II. Adjectives governing the Dative. ●

Most adjectives which in German govern the dative, are in English commonly followed by the preposition *to*, and they generally admit of the questions, *to whom?* *to what?* or *for what?* Adjectives of this kind are: *ähnlich*, like ; *geläufig*, familiar ; *nachtheilig*, injurious ; *nahe*, near ; *nützlich*, useful ; *treu*, faithful ; *unangenehm*, disagreeable ; *unterthänig*, subject ; *unvergeßlich*, ever memorable ; *zuträglich*, conducive ; *verständlich*, intelligible ; &c.

*Examples.*

Der Hund ist seinem Herrn treu.	The dog is faithful to his master.
Du bist mir willkommen.	You are welcome (to me).
Das späte Studiren ist den Augen nachtheilig.	Studying late is injurious to the eyes.
Mein Bruder ist Ihnen sehr ähnlich.	My brother resembles you very much.
Dieses Buch ist dem Schüler nützlich.	This book is useful for the scholar.
Jene Nachricht war mir sehr unangenehm.	That news was very disagree- able to me.

REMARK. — Adjectives governing the dative, are sometimes connected with prepositions, such as, *für*, for; *gegen*, towards or against; *zu*, to: *Dieses ist mir* (or *für mich*) *sehr bequem*, This is very convenient for me.

(§ 102.) III. Adjectives governing the Accusative.

The adjectives which govern the accusative, denote measure, weight, value, age, or time; as, *alt*, old; *breit*, broad; *dicke*, thick; *lang*, long; *hoch*, high; *reich*, rich; *tief*, deep; *groß*, great; *weit*, wide; *schwer*, heavy; *schuldig*, indebted; *werth*, worth; and similar ones.

*Examples.*

Dieses Kind ist fünf Jahr alt.	This child is five years old.
Dieses Tuch ist zwei Ellen breit.	This cloth is two yards broad.
Dieses Haus ist hundert und zwanzig Fuß lang.	This house is one hundred and twenty feet long.
Dieser Garten ist fünf hundert Thaler werth.	This garden is worth five hundred dollars.
Er ist mir hundert Thaler schuldig.	He owes me one hundred dol- lars.

B. *Oblique Cases governed by Verbs.*

(§ 103.) I. Verbs governing the Genitive.

1. The following verbs govern the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing: *anklagen*, to accuse; *belehren*, to acquaint; *berauben*, to rob; *beschuldigen* or *bezüchtigen*, to

charge with; entblößen, to strip; entladen, entledigen or entbinden, to free; entlassen, to dismiss; entsetzen, to discharge; überführen, überzeugen or überweisen, to convince; überheben, to exempt; verweisen, to banish; würdigen, to esteem one worthy.

### Examples.

- Der Tod entladet or entledigt uns aller Sorgen. Death frees us from all cares.  
 Der Löwe würdigte einen Hasen seiner nähern Bekanntschaft. A lion considered a hare worthy of his nearer acquaintance.  
 Der König hat diesen Menschen des Landes verwiesen. The king has banished this man from the country.

REMARK.—Instead of the simple genitive, we sometimes also find a preposition used with its proper case; as, *Der König hat diesen Menschen aus dem Lande verwiesen*; *Er hat mich über diese Sache belehrt*, He has instructed me concerning it.

2. Most reflective verbs have the reflective pronoun in the accusative and require the person or thing to be in the genitive. Verbs of this kind are: *sich annehmen*, to interest one's self; *sich bedenken*, to consider; *sich bedienen*, to use; *sich befeßigen*, to apply one's self; *sich begeben*, to give up; *sich bemächtigen* or *bemeistern*, to possess one's self; *sich besinnen*, *erinnern* or *entsinnen*, to recollect; *sich entäußern*, to renounce; *sich enthalten*, *entbrechen*, *entschlagen* or *entwöhnen*, to abstain from; *sich erbarmen*, to pity; *sich freuen*, to rejoice; *sich getrösten*, to confide in; *sich rühmen*, to boast of; *sich schämen*, to be ashamed of; *sich unterstehen*, *unterfangen* or *unterwinden*, to undertake; *sich versehen*, to be aware of; *sich weigern*, to refuse.

### Examples.

- Napoleon wollte sich der ganzen Welt bemächtigen or bemeistern. Napoleon wished to possess himself of the whole world.  
 Ich bediene mich dieser Gelegenheit. I avail myself of this opportunity.  
 Sie konnte sich der Thränen nicht enthalten. She could not refrain from tears.  
 Können Ihr Euch dessen nicht besinnen? Can you not recollect it?  
 Erbarme dich meiner. Have pity on me.

**REMARK.**—Some verbs of this class are also used with prepositions. Thus, for instance, we may say: *Ich freue mich deines Fleißes* or *über deinen Fleiß*, I am glad of your industry; *Ich erinnere mich deiner* or *an dich*, I remember you; *Ich werde mich über diese Sache bedenken*, I shall reflect on this.

3. Most of the following verbs govern both the genitive and the accusative; with some of them, the accusative is more frequent than the genitive: *achten*, to mind; *bedürfen*, *brauchen* or *gebrauchen*, to need; *begehren*, to desire; *entbehren*, to be without; *erwähnen*, to mention; *ermangeln* or *verfehlen*, to fail; *genießen*, to enjoy; *pflügen*, to foster; *schonen*, to spare; *vergessen*, to forget; *wahrnehmen*, to observe; *geschweigen* (only with the genitive), not to make mention of.

### Examples.

*Wir bedürfen des Geldes* or *das Geld.* We need the money.

*Sie erwähnte deiner* or *dich.* She made mention of you.

*Genieße deines Lebens* or *dein Leben.* Enjoy your life.

*Schone des Armen* or *den Armen.* Spare the poor.

4. The following verbs are also construed with the genitive; but they are more frequently used with a preposition; as, *denken* or *gedenken* (—*an* with the accus.), to think of; *harren* or *warten* (—*auf* with the accus.), to wait for; *lachen* (—*über* with the accus.), to laugh at; *spotten* (*über*), to mock. Also *achten* is frequently connected with the preposition *auf*. Ex.

*Er denkt* or *gedenkt ihrer* or *an sie.* He thinks of her.

*Sie spotten unser* or *über uns.* They mock us.

### (§ 104.) II. Verbs governing the Dative.

1. The dative is used with active verbs, to denote the object for which an action is intended; as, *Ich schrieb meinem Vater einen Brief*, I wrote a letter to my father.

2. Most intransitive verbs are construed with the dative; as, *danke*, to thank; *drohen*, to threaten; *fluchen*, to curse; *fol-*

gen, to follow; gleichen, to resemble; helfen, to help; rathen, to advise; schmeicheln, to flatter; tösen, to be obstinate; weichen, to yield; scheinen, to appear; begegnen, to meet; gefallen, to please; gehorchen, to obey; erscheinen, to appear; zukommen, to anticipate; verzeihen, to pardon; and others, particularly those compounded with the particles *ab, an, auf, bei, ein, ent, entgegen, nach, unter, vor, zu, wider*; as, absagen, to refuse; angehören, to belong; aufwarten, to wait on; beistehen, to assist; entfliehen, to escape; entsprechen, to correspond; nachgeben, to yield; nachahmen, to imitate; zuhören, to listen; widersprechen, to contradict.

### Examples.

Ich danke dir, mein Freund.	I thank you, my friend.
Dieser Mann gleicht deinem Vater.	This man resembles your father.
Mein Bruder begegnete deiner Schwester.	My brother met your sister.
Der Dieb entsprang dem Gefängnisse.	The thief escaped from the prison.
Dieses Haus gefällt vielen Leuten.	This house pleases many people.
Er hörte mir aufmerksam zu.	He listened to me attentively.
Wir konnten der Versuchung nicht widerstehen.	We could not resist the temptation.
Er ist dem Tode noch einmal entgangen.	He has escaped death once more.

REMARK. — By assuming the prefix *be*, many intransitive verbs receive an active signification; as, folgen, to follow—*be*folgen, to observe; glücken, to succeed—*beglücken*, to renderappy.

3. Impersonal verbs, which are intransitive, require the dative; as, *es ziemt mir*, it becomes me; *es dünkt mir*, methinks; *es eßelt mir*, I loathe; *es fehlt, gebricht or mangelt mir* (—*an* with the dative), there is a want of; *es scheint mir*, it seems to me. In the same manner the following verbs are used: *ahnen*, to anticipate; *begegnen*, to happen; *belieben*, to please; *befommen*, to agree with (the health); *entfallen*, to escape (the memory); *einfallen*, to occur; *gefallen*, to please; *gebühren*, to be due; *gehören*, to belong; *gelingen or gerathen*, to succeed;

**mißlingen** or **fehl schlagen**, to fail; **genügen**, to suffice; **gereichen**, to afford; **grauen**, to be scared; **einleuchten**, to be clear; **daran liegen**, to concern; **mißfallen**, to displease; **vorkommen**, to appear; **schaubern**, to shudder; **schwindeln**, to be giddy; **schmecken**, to taste; **ansehen**, to suit; **Leid thun**, to be sorry; **träumen**, to dream.

4. The following reflective verbs have the personal pronoun in the dative: **sich anmaßen**, to claim; **sich ausbedingen**, to condition; **sich einbilden**, to imagine; **sich zutrauen** or **getrauen**, to venture; **sich vornehmen**, to propose to one's self; **sich vorstellen**, to represent to one's self: **ich bilde mir ein**, I imagine.

5. Instead of the possessive pronouns, the dative of personal pronouns is frequently used, and then the noun with which the possessive pronoun was connected, assumes the definite article. Thus, we may say: **Seine Haare sind ihm ausgefallen**, or **die Haare sind ihm ausgefallen**, His hair has fallen out; **Mein Herz blutet**, or **das Herz blutet mir**, My heart is bleeding. So likewise the dative of substantives is sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, **Das Haus meines Bruders ist abgebrannt**, or **Meinem Bruder ist das Haus abgebrannt**, My brother's house is burnt down.

### (§ 105.) III. Verbs governing the Accusative.

1. The accusative is used with transitive verbs to denote the immediate object of an action; as, **Der Vater liebt den Sohn**,\* The father loves the son; **Ich lese einen Brief**, I read a letter.†

2. Most reflective verbs (§ 103. 2.) have the reflective pronoun in the accusative; as, **ich schäme mich**, I am ashamed; **ich erinnere mich**, I remember.

3. The following verbs are construed with a double accusative: **nennen**, to name; **heißen**,‡ to call; **schelten**, to abuse;

---

\* In the passive voice: **Der Sohn wird von dem Vater geliebt**, The son is loved by his father. By such a circumlocution, the accusative in the active voice may be easily determined in doubtful cases, since it corresponds with the nominative in the passive.

† The accusative is frequently implied; as, **Er schrieb mir**, He wrote to me. Sometimes it is expressed by a whole sentence; as, **Er schrieb mir, daß sein Bruder krank sei**, He wrote to me, that his brother was sick.

‡ This verb is also neuter and has a passive signification: as, **Wie heißt diese Stadt?** How is this city called?

**schimpfen**, to call by some opprobrious name; **taufen**, to christen; **lehren**, to teach; **fragen**, to ask.

**Er nennt mich seinen Freund.** He calls me his friend.

**Er hieß ihn einen Narren.** He called him a fool.

**Wer lehrt dich die Deutsche Sprache?** Who teaches you German?

**Ich fragte ihn seine Meinung.** I asked his opinion.

**REMARK.** — After **lehren**, instead of the first accusative, we may use the dative; and the second accusative after **fragen** is commonly preceded and governed by the preposition **um**; as, **Ich fragte ihn um seine Meinung**, I asked his opinion.

4. Intransitive verbs sometimes assume a transitive signification, and govern the accusative; as, **Ich gehe selten diesen Weg**, I seldom pass this road.

5. Most impersonal verbs govern the accusative; as, **es ärgert** or **verdrießt mich**, it vexes me; **es wundert mich** or **es nimmt mich Wunder**, I wonder; **es freuet mich**, I am glad. In the same manner the following verbs are used: **betreffen** or **angehen**, to concern; **befremden**, to surprise; **befallen**, to befall; **dauern**, to pity; **dürsten**, to be thirsty; **frieren**, to be cold; **gelüsten**, to desire; **reuen** or **gereuen**, to regret; **hungern**, to be hungry; **interessiren**, to interest; **jammern**, to pity; **jucken**, to itch; **kümmern**, to trouble; **schlāfern**, to feel sleepy; **schwitzen**, to perspire; **anwandeln**, to seize.

All these impersonal verbs have a transitive signification, so that before each of them, we could supply the verb, to cause or make; as, **Es friert mich**, It makes me feel cold.

6. The accusative is also governed by verbs denoting weight, value, extent or dimension; as, **Es wiegt einen Zentner**, It weighs one hundred pounds; **Es kostet einen Thaler**, It costs one dollar.

#### (§ 106.) REMARKS.

1. If the reference made to the particular part of an object acted upon, seems to be rather accidental than necessary, the whole object is put in the accusative, and its part is denoted by a preposition; as, **Er trat mich auf den Fuß**, He trod upon my foot; **Er stieß mich vor die Brust**, He struck me on the breast. But, if the part acted upon is to be particularly noticed, then the whole object is put in the dative and the particular part in

the accusative; or the latter is expressed by some preposition; as, *Er trat mir den Fuß wund*, He wounded my foot by treading on it; *Er fühlte mir an den Puls*, He felt my pulse. According to § 104. 5. we may also say: *Er trat meinen Fuß wund*; *Er trat auf meinen Fuß*.

2. *Heißen*, to order, governs the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing; as, *Wer hat dir dieses geheissen?* Who has given you these orders? The accusative may also be supplied by a dependent sentence, commencing with the conjunction *daß*; as, *Wer hat dir geheissen, daß du dieses thun solltest*, Who has ordered you to do this? But, if the thing is omitted, or simply expressed by an infinitive, the person is put in the accusative; as, *Er hieß ihn gehen*, He ordered him to go.

3. The signification and government of *lassen* will be seen in the following examples:

- a. *Lasset den Kindern nicht ihren Willen*, Do not let children have their own way.
- b. *Er ließ mich schreiben*, He permitted (or caused) me to write; *Er ließ den Mörder hinrichten*, He ordered the murderer to be executed.
- c. *Er ließ mir sagen*, He ordered me to be informed; *Er ließ mir durch seine Schwester sagen*, He informed me through his sister.

In the examples under *b*, the person that has to do or suffer the action expressed by the infinitive, is put in the accusative. In the first example under *c*, the person that has to perform the action is understood, and in the following example it is *seine Schwester*. In both these examples as well as under *a*, the dative is founded on the general rule under § 104. 1. It is to be observed, that in German the infinitive active only is used after *heißen* and *lassen*, although in English the infinitive passive should be used.

### C. *Oblique Cases governed by Prepositions.*

Some prepositions govern the genitive, some the dative, and some the accusative; others govern both the genitive and the dative; and others again both the dative and accusative.

(§ 107.) I. Prepositions governing the Genitive.

statt or anstatt, instead of.	kraft, by virtue of.
diesseit or diesseits, on this side of.	laut, according to.
jenseit or jenseits, on the other side of.	vermöge, by dint of.
halb, halben or halber, on account of.	mittels or vermittelt, by means of.
außerhalb, out of.	um — willen, for the sake of.
innerhalb, within.	ungeachtet or ohngeachtet, notwithstanding.
oberhalb, above.	unweit or unfern, not far from.
unterhalb, below.	während, during.
	wegen, on account of.

## REMARKS.

1. Um—willen is always separated by the genitive it governs; as, um Gottes willen, for God's sake. So, in like manner, anstatt is sometimes separated, and then, Statt is to be written with a capital letter; as, an des Prinzen Statt, in place of the prince.

2. Halb, halben, halber always follow after the genitive; and this is also frequently the case with wegen and ungeachtet; as, des Freundes halben, for the sake of a friend; des Menschen wegen, for the sake of man.

3. Halben is used, when the substantive is preceded by an article or pronoun; and halber, when that is not the case: halb is used only in compounds; as, des Freundes halben, for the sake of a friend; Alters halber, on account of old age; deshalb, therefore.

4. When halben, wegen and willen are applied to personal pronouns, or to the relative der, they are subjoined to them, and for the sake of euphony, the genitives meiner, deiner, seiner, ihrer, change the final letter r into t, whilst unser, euer, deren, and dessen, receive an additional t; as, meinethwegen, deinetwegen, seinethwegen, ihrethwegen, unsertwegen, euertwegen, derentwegen, dessentwegen, on my account, on thy account, &c.

5. In like manner halb, wegen, and ungeachtet are subjoined to desß (the genitive of das); as, desßhalb, desßwegen, on that account; desßungeachtet, notwithstanding. So also we say: weßhalb, weßwegen, why.

6. To the prepositions which govern the genitive, we may also add certain substantives, reduced to the form of adverbs; as, *anfangs* or *eingangs*, at the beginning; *hinsichts*, *hinsichtlich* or *rücksichtlich*, in reference.

(§ 108.) II. Prepositions governing the Dative.

<i>aus</i> , out of.	<i>mit</i> , with.
<i>außer</i> , out of, besides.	<i>nächst</i> , next to, after.
<i>bei</i> , by, with, at.	<i>zunächst</i> , next.
<i>entgegen</i> , against, towards.	<i>nebst</i> or <i>sammt</i> , together with.
<i>gegenüber</i> , opposite to.	<i>seit</i> , since.
<i>gemäß</i> , according to.	<i>von</i> , by, from, of.
<i>nach</i> , after, behind, to, according.	<i>zu</i> , to, at.
<i>ing</i> .	<i>zuwider</i> , contrary to.

REMARK. — *Entgegen*, *gemäß*, *zunächst*, *zuwider*, *gegenüber*, are placed after the case which they govern. *Gegenüber* may be separated; as, *Er wohnt gegen mir über*, He lives opposite to me.

(§ 109.) III. Prepositions governing the Genitive and Dative.

<i>längs</i> , along.	<i>ob</i> , on account of, above.
<i>zufolge</i> , according to.	<i>binnen</i> , within.
<i>troß</i> , in spite of.	

REMARKS.

*Zufolge* governs the genitive when it is put before a noun, and the dative when it is placed after; as, *zufolge deines Auftrages*, or *deinem Auftrage zufolge*, according to your commission.

*Troß*, in connexion with substantives, may at any time govern either the genitive or dative; as, *troß des schlechten Wetters*, or *troß dem schlechten Wetter*, in spite of the bad weather. But instead of saying *troß dessen*, it is better to say *troß dem*, in spite of it.

*Ob* is rather seldom used; it governs the genitive when it signifies on account of, and the dative when it means above.

*Binnen*, requires the genitive when it refers to a place; as, *binnen des Dorfes*, within the village; but it requires the dative when it refers to time; as, *binnen einigen Tagen*, within some days.

(§ 110.) IV. Prepositions governing the Accusative.

durch, through, by.

entlang, along.

für, for.

gegen or gen, towards, against.

ohne or sonder, without.

um, around, about, for.

wider, against, in opposition to.

REMARKS.

Durch is placed after its case, when it denotes during; as, *die Nacht durch*; but it is better and stronger to say: *die Nacht hindurch*.

Entlang is put after the substantive; as, *den Bach entlang*, along the brook.

Sonder is not much in use.

Gen, an abbreviation of gegen, only signifies a direction to a place; as, *Er sah gen Himmel*, He looked towards heaven.

Ohne is sometimes put after its substantive, and then it governs the genitive; as, *Zweifels ohne*, without doubt.

(§ 111.) V. Prepositions governing the Dative and Accusative.

an, at, on, in.

auf, upon.

hinter, behind.

in, in, into.

neben, by the side of, near.

über, over, upon.

unter, under, among.

vor, before.

zwischen, between.

These prepositions require the dative, when they simply denote existence at a certain time, or motion or rest in a certain place, so as to imply the questions, where? at what time? But they govern the accusative, when they denote a direction, transition or reference to some object, so as to require the questions, whither? in what direction? with respect to what? how long?

Examples.

Dative.

Accusative.

Er geht in dem Garten spazieren, He is walking in the garden.

Lasset uns in den Garten gehen, Let us go into the garden.

Der Stuhl steht an der Wand,      Stelle den Stuhl an die Wand,  
The chair stands against the      Put the chair against the  
wall.      wall.

Der Vogel sitzt auf dem Baume,      Der Vogel fliegt auf den Baum,  
The bird sits on the tree.      The bird flies to the tree.

Dieses geschah an einem Sonntage,      Ich denke an ihn, I think of  
This happened on a      him i. e. my thoughts are  
Sunday.      directed to him.

(§ 112.) There are some *Compound Prepositions*, which are separated by the object to which they refer; as,

um—her	von—her	von—auf.
unter—weg	vor—her	nach—zu.
von—aus	vor—hin	um—willen.
von—an	hinter—her	von—weg.

*Examples.*

Sie standen um den Wagen      They stood around the wagon.  
her.

Er hat mir von Berlin aus geschrieben.      He wrote to me from Berlin.

Er stellte sich vor den König      He placed himself before the  
hin.      king.

Sie sind nach dem Dorfe zu gegangen.      They have gone towards the  
village.

(§ 113.) D. *Oblique Cases standing Absolutely.*

We call those cases absolute which, apparently, are not governed by any word.

1. Nouns denoting time, are generally put in the accusative on the questions, when? \* how long? how often; as,

Er wurde den dritten Februar      He was born on the third of  
geboren.      February.

Mein Bruder kam Montag.      My brother arrived on Monday.

Wir erwarten ihn jeden Augenblick.      We expect him every moment.

---

\* Hence, dates are expressed by the accusative; as, den zehnten Januar.

Wir sind schon einen Monat hier. We have been here one month.

Ich sehe ihn jeden Tag dreimal. I see him three times every day.

REMARK. — In denoting a duration of time, the adverb *lang* or *hindurch* is sometimes inserted after the accusative, for the sake of emphasis; as, *drei Tage lang* or *hindurch*, during three days; *fünf Jahre hindurch*, during five years.

Instead of the simple accusative, we also sometimes find a preposition used with its corresponding case. Thus, we may say: *den andern Tag*, or *am andern Tage*, the other day.

2. Some nouns denoting time are, on the questions, when? how often? put in the genitive, when they are not qualified, except by the definite article, or by the compound numbers, *einsmal*, *zweimal*, &c. This genitive commonly indicates a custom, habit, or repetition. Nouns of this kind are the following: *Frühling*, *Sommer*, *Herbst*, *Winter*, *Morgen*, *Abend*, *Tag*, *Mittag*, *Nachmittag*, *Vormittag*, *Nacht*, *Mitternacht*, *Jahr*, *Monat*; and all the days of the week.\*

### Examples.

Die Post kommt des Sonntags an, und geht des Donnerstags und Freitags wieder ab. The mail arrives on Sunday and Monday, and leaves on Thursday and Friday.

Er schreibt mir dreimal des Monats. He writes to me three times a month.

3. The genitive is also met with in some expressions, denoting existence at or in a place; as, *dieses Ortes* or *hiesigen Ortes*, in this place; *gehörigen Ortes*, in or at a proper place; *aller Orte*, in all places, or every where.

Instead of the simple genitive, a preposition with its proper case is sometimes used; as, *an allen Orten*.

4. The genitive is sometimes employed to denote some way or manner; as in the following phrases: *glücklicher Weise*, happily; *stehenden Fußes*, instantly; *gerades* or *geraden Weges*,

\* *Stunde*, f. hour; *Woche*, f. week and *Minute*, f. minute always require the accusative at the question, when?

straightways; folgender Gestalt, in the following manner; *meines Theils*, for my part; *unsern Theils*, for our part; *meines Wissens*, to my knowledge; *meines Bedünkens*, in my opinion; *einiger Maßen*, in some measure; *gewisser Maßen*, in a certain degree; *unverrichteter Sache*, without having realized one's design.

5. The genitive is likewise found in the following phrases: *Hungers sterben*, to die of hunger; *eines schmerzlichen Todes sterben*, to die a painful death; *des Zutrauens leben*, to live with confidence; *der Hoffnung leben*, to live on hope; *seines Weges* or *seiner Wege gehen*, to go one's way, *i. e.* to mind one's business; *Handels einig werden*, to agree to terms; *Willens sein*, to be of the opinion; *guten Muthes sein*, to have courage; *es ist Herkommens*, it is customary; *es lohnt sich der Mühe nicht*, it is not worth while; *es giebt der Augenblicke*, there are moments; *ich bin des Todes*, I am ruined.

6. Finally we may observe some elliptical phrases; as, *guten Morgen*, good morning; *das Schwert in der Hand*, sword in hand; &c.

## CHAPTER III.

### QUALIFYING TERMS OF NOUNS.

In the two former chapters, we have treated of the cases of the noun and pronoun; but these are frequently qualified by adjuncts, which now require our particular notice. As the pronouns however are qualified only by appositions, or by a whole sentence, and in the same manner as nouns, we shall only speak of the qualifying terms of a noun, which may be any part of speech, or even a whole sentence.

#### (§ 114.) A. *Of the proper use of the Article.*

The article tends to particularize that which is general: the definite article serves to do so in a definite, and the indefinite article in an indefinite manner. Thus, if we say: „*Der König ist gerecht*, The king is just,” we do not mean, that every king

is just, but only one particular king, whom we have in view.\* Generally both the definite article *der, die, das*, and the indefinite article *ein, eine, ein*, are used in German as in English.

### RULE I.

The article must agree with its noun in gender, number and case; as, *Ich sah im (in dem) Geiste den Engel des Gerichts über die Völker kommen*, I saw in spirit the angel of judgment come over the nations.

### RULE II.

The article is repeated before nouns of different genders; as, *der Bruder, die Schwester und das Kind*; and sometimes, for the sake of emphasis, it is repeated before each of several nouns of the same gender, especially in superscriptions; as, *der Löwe und der Hase*, the lion and the hare.

### RULE III.

The article is generally omitted before proper names; as, *Amerika, England, London, Ostindien, Cicero, Demostenes*.

### *Exceptions.*

1. The article is required before proper names of persons:

*a.* When an adjective precedes them; as, *der fleißige Karl*, the industrious Charles.

*b.* When they are used in the plural number, or in a figurative sense; as, *die Ludwige Frankreichs*, the Louises of France; *Friedrich der Zweite ist der Cäsar der Preußen*, Frederick the Second is the Cæsar of the Prussians.

*c.* When the name of the author stands instead of his writings; as, *Ich lese den Schiller*, I am reading Schiller.

*d.* When we speak of distinguished persons; as, *Die Marra war eine große Sängerin*, Marra was a great songstress.

---

\* But the article loses its power of particularizing before an object, the predicate of which is applicable to any other individual of the same kind; as, *Der Mensch ist sterblich*, Man is mortal. The English are more correct in omitting the article in cases of this kind.

*e.* In familiar language; as, *Rufe mir den August, Call August to me.*

*f.* For the sake of distinction, before oblique cases which have no change of termination, and always in the genitive of names terminating in *es, is, os, as, or us*; as, *Brutus tödtete (den) Cäsar, Brutus killed Cæsar; Die Frau des Sokrates hieß Xantippe, The wife of Socrates was called Xantippe.*

*g.* To denote one of several individuals, that have the same name; as, *Er ist ein Stuart, which is the same as, Er ist einer der Stuarthe, He is one of the Stuarts.*

2. The article is required before proper names of places:

*a.* When they are qualified by a preceding adjective; as, *das große London, the great London.*

*b.* The following proper names always have the definite article: *die Schweiz, Switzerland; die Niederlande, the Netherlands; die Türkei, Turkey; die Lombardei, Lombardy; der Haag, the Hague; die Levante, the Levant; die Pfalz, the Palatinate.*

3. The definite article is always used before proper names of rivers, seas, mountains and people; as, *der Rhein, the Rhine; der Vesuv, Vesuvius; der Amerikaner, the American.*

#### RULE IV.

The article is omitted before nouns denoting matter in a general manner, or denoting only a part of it; as, *Wasser ist nothwendiger als Wein, Water is more necessary than wine; Ich esse lieber Brod als Kuchen, I rather eat bread than cakes.* But the article is to be used, when the general terms are applied to particular objects; as, *das Wasser des Rheins, the water of the Rhine; der Arabische Kaffee, the coffee of Arabia.*

#### RULE V.

The article is omitted before abstract nouns taken in an indefinite sense; as, *Noth lehrt beten, Necessity teaches how to pray; Friede ernährt, Unfriede verzehrt, Peace supports, discord consumes.* But the article must be used before abstract nouns:

1. When the general notion is particularized ; as, *der Friede von Paris*, the treaty of Paris ; *die Noth der Armen*, the distress of the poor.

2. When a qualifying adjective is added ; as, *die holde Tugend*, the noble virtue ; *die göttliche Gerechtigkeit*, Divine justice.

3. When they are used in a figurative sense, and are, as it were, personified ; as, *Die Tugend belohnt ihre Verehrer*, Virtue rewards her worshippers.

#### RULE VI.

The article is also omitted in titles of books and in other inscriptions ; as, *Deutsche Sprachlehre*, German Grammar ; *erster Theil*, first part ; *Inhalt*, contents ; *Vorrede*, preface.

#### RULE VII.

In German, some terms drop the article, whilst in English, they either retain it, or have a conjunctive possessive pronoun in place of it ; as, *alle Welt*, all the world ; *in bester Ordnung*, in the best order ; *vor Endigung des Processes*, before the conclusion of the lawsuit ; *Halte Gott vor Augen*, Keep God before your eyes. The above remark also applies to some adjectives and participles ; as, *ersterer*, the former ; *letzterer*, the latter ; *befagter*, the aforesaid ; *erwähnter* or *gedachter*, the above mentioned ; *folgender*, the following.

(§ 115.) B. *One Noun qualified by another.*

#### RULE I.

Nouns or pronouns, standing either directly in apposition with each other, or connected by the particles *als*, as ; *wie*, like, must agree in case.

#### Examples.

*Cicero, ein großer Redner, Philosoph und Staatsmann, hat viele Schriften hinterlassen.*

Cicero, a great orator, philosopher, and statesman, has left many writings.

*Lycurgus hat sich als Gesetzgeber verdient gemacht.*

Lycurgus has distinguished himself as a lawgiver.

*Cicero empfiehlt die Geschichte als ein Licht der Wahrheit.*

Cicero recommends history as a light of truth.

So also the proper names of cities, countries and months, are put in apposition with the preceding common noun; as, *die Stadt London*, the city of London; *das Königreich Preußen*, the kingdom of Prussia; *der Monat Juni*, the month of June.

### RULE II.

One noun qualifying another, without being in apposition with it, is put in the genitive, on the questions, whose? of whom? of what? as,

*Die Jahre der Jugend sind die Frühlingszeit des Lebens.*      The years of youth are the spring of life.

### RULE III.

Nouns which, according to the preceding rule, would be put in the genitive, remain in the nominative\* after nouns denoting measure, number, weight or quantity; as, *Schoppen*, pint; *Buch*, quire; *Elle*, yard; *Glas*, glass; *Zentner*, a hundred weight.

### Examples.

<i>Ein Stück Brod</i> , a piece of bread.	<i>Eine Reihe Obstbäume</i> , a row of fruit-trees.
<i>Ein Buch Papier</i> , a quire of paper.	<i>Eine Menge Vögel</i> , a flock of birds.
<i>Vier Ellen Tuch</i> , four yards of cloth.	<i>Diese Gattung Strümpfe</i> , this kind of stockings.
<i>Ein Schoppen Bier</i> , a pint of beer.	<i>Ein Regiment Fußvolf</i> , a regiment of infantry.
<i>Ein Glas Wasser</i> , a glass of water.	<i>Es giebt eine Art Leute</i> , there is a kind of people.
<i>Acht Zentner Zucker</i> , eight hundred weight of sugar.	<i>Diese Art Wörter</i> , this sort of words.

But if qualifying nouns of this kind are preceded by an adjective or pronoun, they are put in the genitive; as, *ein Glas guten Weines*, a glass of good wine; *eine Art wilder Menschen*, a kind of wild men.†

\* Unless the genitive should be supplied by a preposition, according to rule IV.

† Two substantives, one of which qualifies the other, are frequently united into one word; as, *das Vaterland*, country. See § 97.

## RULE IV.

The genitive is frequently supplied by prepositions, especially when two substantives meet, one of which denotes a tendency, or an aversion to the other; as,

Die Furcht vor Strafe ist nicht der rechte Antrieb zur Tugend. Fear of punishment is not the proper motive of virtue.

Die Hoffnung auf bessere Zeiten täuscht uns oft. Hope of better times very often deceives us.

Die Liebe zu unserm Vaterlande ist löblich. The love of our country is laudable.\*

The preposition *von* is very common, and is especially used:

1. When the material is mentioned of which any thing consists; as, Ein Becher von Silber, a cup of silver; ein Tisch von Marmor, a table of marble.

2. To denote the separation of a part from its whole; as, ein Stück von diesem Brode, a piece of this bread.

3. To indicate birth, age, religion, character, rank, country or place; as,

Ein Russe von Geburt, a Russian by birth.

Ein Mann von achtzig Jahren, a man eighty years old.

Von Religion ein Mahomedaner, a Mahometan by religion.

Ein Mann von edler Denkungsart, a man of noble principles.

Ein Mann von ausgezeichneten Talenten, a man of excellent talents.

Ein Mann von altem Adel, a man of the old nobility.

Die Grenzen von Frankreich, the boundaries of France.

Der Kaiser von Morokko, the emperor of Morocco.

Der König von Preußen, the king of Prussia.

Der Herzog von Württemberg, the duke of Wirtemberg.

4. To denote value, weight, or measure; as,

Ein Maß von vier Kannen, a measure of four gallons.

Ein Schiff von sechs hundert Tonnen, a ship of six hundred tons.

---

\* The proper preposition in German may frequently be determined by substituting in English some other preposition for "of."

Ein Thurm von fünfzig Fuß Höhe, a tower of fifty feet in height.

Eine Summe von tausend Gulden, a sum of a thousand guilders.

Eine Reise von zehn Meilen, a journey of ten miles.

Ein Gedicht von verlor'nem Paradiese, a poem on the loss of Paradise.

Sometimes it is indifferent, whether the genitive, or the preposition *von* with the dative be used. Thus, we may say : *Er ist der Verfasser dieses Werkes* or *von diesem Werke*, He is the author of this work. The preposition is often preferred, to avoid an inelegant repetition of the same termination. Thus, *Die Ursache von dem großen Unglücke dieses Mannes*, sounds better, than, *Die Ursache des großen Unglücks dieses Mannes*, the cause of the great misfortune of this man.

(§ 116.) C. *Nouns qualified by Adjectives.*

RULE I.

Adjectives are used in their absolute form, when they are neither preceded by an article or pronoun, nor followed by a noun expressed or understood ; as,

Erfindung macht den Künstler groß. Discoveries render the artist great.

Schön und majestätisch ist der Untergang der Sonne. Beautiful and majestic is the setting of the sun.

RULE II.

Adjectives, used in immediate connexion with a substantive, precede it, and agree with it in gender, number and case ; their declension, however, as we have seen in etymology, differs according as they are used with or without an article or pronoun.

Diese schöne Dame ist die einzige Tochter eines reichen Mannes. This beautiful lady is the only daughter of a rich man.

Ein gütiger und gerechter König ist ein wahrer Vater seines Volkes. An affectionate and just king is a real father of his people.

## RULE III.

If the noun is understood, the agreement remains the same as under the last rule. To show that an adjective implies a noun, in English, the word *one* is frequently put after it; but in German, it is simply indicated by the termination of the adjective, or by a preceding article or pronoun; as,

Blumen pflückten sie, gelbe und rothe.      Flowers they gathered, yellow and red ones.

Sie haben mehr Bücher, aber ich habe bessere.      You have more books, but I have better ones.

## RULE IV.

When in the singular number an adjective refers to several nouns of different genders, it must be repeated before each of them; as, *ein gelehrter Vater und eine gelehrte Tochter*, a learned father and a learned daughter. Such a repetition also frequently takes place before nouns of the same gender; as, *ein gelehrter Vater und ein gelehrter Sohn*. In the plural number, several nouns of any gender may have but one adjective in common; as, *kleine Knaben und Mädchen*, small boys and girls.

## RULE V.

The present participle used as an adjective and preceded by the particle *zu*, denotes possibility or necessity; and corresponds with the Latin participle in *dus*; as,

*Das zu lobende Kind*, a child which is to be praised.

 (§ 117.) D. *Nouns qualified by Numbers.*

## RULE I.

When numbers are declined, they agree with their nouns, like adjectives; as, *Romulus war der erste Römische König; Ich sah nur einen Menschen*.

## RULE II.

After numerals, those nouns of the masculine and neuter genders, which denote weight, measure, or number, remain in the nominative singular. Nouns of this kind are: *Buch*, *n.* quire;

**Fuß, m.** or **Schuh, m.** foot (in measure); **Loth, n.** half an ounce; **Maaß, n.** tankard; **Paar, n.** pair; **Pfund, n.** pound; **Rieß, n.** ream; **Zoll, m.** inch; **Mann, m.** man (taken collectively).

### Examples.

**Ein Bataillon von acht hundert Mann** (not **Männern**), a battalion of eight hundred men; **eine Mauer von drei Fuß** (not **Füßen**), a wall of three feet; **drei Buch** (not **Bücher**) **Papier**, three quires of paper; **zwanzig Pfund Zucker**, twenty pounds of sugar.—**Uhr, f.** o'clock, is also subject to the rule of these nouns; but other terms of time, as well as the names of coins, are excepted; hence we say: **sechs Uhr**, six o'clock; **sechs Schillinge**, six shillings (coin); **sechs Tage**; **sechs Jahre**.\*

Also after the number **ein**, one, preceded by a higher number, the substantive remains in German in the singular number; as, **hundert und einen Tag** (not **Tage**), one hundred and one days.

### RULE III.

In general, the cardinal and ordinal numbers are used in German as in English; as, **das zehnte Jahr**; **im Jahr ein tausend acht hundert und vierzig**; **Seite vierzehn**; **Nummer neun**. But in dates, the ordinals precede the names of the months and agree with them; as, **den zehnten April**, or **am zehnten April**. Phrases such as, "the first or second instant," &c., are translated in the following manner: **am ersten dieses Monats**.

For other remarks respecting numbers, see etymology.

### (§ 118.) E. *Nouns qualified by Pronouns.*

#### RULE I.

Pronouns, like adjectives, when prefixed to a noun, agree with it in gender, number, and case; as, **Dieser Herr ist mein Better**, This gentleman is my nephew; **Diese Frau ist meine Mutter**, This lady is my mother.

#### RULE II.

When a pronoun refers to several substantives of the same gender and number, it may be placed only before the first; as, **mein Vater und Bruder**; **meine Mutter und Schwester**.

---

\* Some writers do not except **Jahr**, hence they would say: **sechs Jahr**

## RULE III.

When a pronoun refers to several substantives of different genders and numbers, it should be repeated before each of them; as, *mein Vater und meine Mutter; mein Haus und meine Bücher.*

(§ 119.) F. A noun may also be qualified indirectly: 1. By a dependent sentence; as, *Die Uhr, welche mit kostbaren Steinen besetzt ist, ist das Geschenk meiner Mutter*, or abbreviated, *Die Uhr mit kostbaren Steinen besetzt, ist &c.*, The watch (which is) set with precious stones, is a present from my mother. 2. By adverbial terms; as, *dieser Mann hier*, this man here; *die Schlacht bei Leipzig*, the battle of Leipzig. These adverbial phrases may also be considered as abbreviated forms of dependent sentences, so that the phrase "this man here" would be the same as, "this man who is here."

(§ 120.) *Additional Observations on the Pronouns.*

1. Pronouns, when not prefixed to a noun, agree in gender and number with the word to which they relate; their case (if they are not in the nominative,) depends upon the verb, or some other word in the sentence. Of the personal pronouns, the third person singular agrees in gender and number with the word to which it refers; but the other persons agree only in number.

2. If it be doubtful to which of several objects a personal pronoun refers, we must substitute, in place of it, the demonstrative pronoun *dieser* or *der letztere* in reference to a nearer object, and *jener* or *der erstere* in reference to one further off. If we would say: „*Mein Bruder war bei deinem Vater als er starb*, My brother was with your father when he died," it would be doubtful, which of the two died: if we allude to the latter, we have to use *dieser* instead of *er*; but if we refer to the former, we must substitute *jener*. *Meine Mutter unterstützte die arme Wittwe, aber jene (not sie) ist jetzt todt*; My mother supported the poor widow, but the former (not she) is now dead.

3. After a preposition, it is better to use *dasselbe* instead of *es*; and in speaking of things, we may also use the adverbs compounded of prepositions, and the particles *da* or *dar*, *wo* or *wor*; as, *Wie heißt das Kind? Ich interessire mich für dasselbe (not für es)*, What is the name of the child? I feel much in



## RULE III.

When a pronoun refers to several substantives of different genders and numbers, it should be repeated before each of them; as, *mein Vater und meine Mutter; mein Haus und meine Bücher.*

(§ 119.) F. A noun may also be qualified indirectly: 1. By a dependent sentence; as, *Die Uhr, welche mit kostbaren Steinen besetzt ist, ist das Geschenk meiner Mutter,* or abbreviated, *Die Uhr mit kostbaren Steinen besetzt, ist &c.,* The watch (which is) set with precious stones, is a present from my mother. 2. By adverbial terms; as, *dieser Mann hier,* this man here; *die Schlacht bei Leipzig,* the battle of Leipzig. These adverbial phrases may also be considered as abbreviated forms of dependent sentences, so that the phrase "this man here" would be the same as, "this man who is here."

(§ 120.) *Additional Observations on the Pronouns.*

1. Pronouns, when not prefixed to a noun, agree in gender and number with the word to which they relate; their case (if they are not in the nominative,) depends upon the verb, or some other word in the sentence. Of the personal pronouns, the third person singular agrees in gender and number with the word to which it refers; but the other persons agree only in number.

2. If it be doubtful to which of several objects a personal pronoun refers, we must substitute, in place of it, the demonstrative pronoun *dieser* or *der letztere* in reference to a nearer object, and *jener* or *der erstere* in reference to one further off. If we would say: „*Mein Bruder war bei deinem Vater als er starb,* My brother was with your father when he died," it would be doubtful, which of the two died: if we allude to the latter, we have to use *dieser* instead of *er*; but if we refer to the former, we must substitute *jener*. *Meine Mutter unterstützte die arme Wittwe, aber jene (not sie) ist jetzt todt;* My mother supported the poor widow, but the former (not she) is now dead.

3. After a preposition, it is better to use *dasselbe* instead of *es*; and in speaking of things, we may also use the adverbs compounded of prepositions, and the particles *da* or *dar*, *wo* or *wor*; as, *Wie heißt das Kind? Ich interessire mich für dasselbe (not für es),* What is the name of the child? I feel much in

interested for it. *Dies ist ein schönes Buch: was haben Sie für dasselbe or dafür (not für es) bezahlt?* This is a fine book: what did you pay for it?

4. A demonstrative pronoun is also used to avoid the occurrence of two similar personal pronouns. Thus, we should say: *Kennen Sie dieselbe (not sie)?* Do you know her?

5. If a pronoun relates to the neuter nouns, *Weib*, woman; *Frauenzimmer*, lady; or to diminutives formed from masculine and feminine nouns, it agrees with their natural, and not with their grammatical gender; as, *Er liebt sein Weib, aber sie (not es) liebt ihn nicht*, He loves his wife, but she does not love him. *Was macht Ihr Söhnchen? Ist er (not es) noch fleißig?* How does your little son come on? Is he still industrious? *Ist Fräulein X. zu Hause? Sie (not es) ist bei ihrem (not seinem) Bruder.* Is Miss X. at home? She is with her brother.

6. If a pronoun is the subject, and relates to a noun or pronoun which is the predicate, or vice versa, it is commonly put in the neuter gender, singular number, without any reference to the gender or number of the noun or pronoun to which it relates; as, *das ist mein Vater; das ist meine Mutter; das sind schöne Sachen; Er ist es; Sie sind es.*

7. Should it be doubtful to which of several nouns or pronouns the possessive pronouns *sein* and *ihr* refer, it becomes necessary to use, in place of these possessive pronouns, the genitive of the pronoun *der, die, das* (§ 33.), or the genitive of the terms, *der letztere, der erstere*; as, *Mein Oheim schätzt diesen Mann wegen dessen (not wegen seines) Sohnes*, My uncle esteems this gentleman on account of his (the gentleman's) son.

8. So also, in speaking of inanimate things, the genitive of the pronoun *der*, or of *derselbe*, is preferred to the possessive pronoun *sein*; as, *Dieses Buch ist sehr gut, aber dessen Einband, or der Einband desselben (not sein Einband) gefällt mir nicht*, This book is excellent, but its cover does not please me.

9. The relative pronoun *welcher, welche, welches* is used in immediate connexion with substantives, or in reference to some distinct object; as, *Blücher, welches Feldherrn ich mich wohl erinnere*, Blücher, the general, whom I well remember. *Der Mann, welchen wir gestern sahen, ist todt*, That man, whom we saw yesterday, is dead. The relative *der, die, das* is only

used in reference to a definite object; and in such a reference, its genitive is always preferred to that of *welcher*, unless the genitive should be governed by a preceding preposition, in which case *welcher* must be used; as, *Die Frau, deren Haus abgebrannt ist*, The woman whose house has burnt down; *Die Zeit, während welcher ic.*, The time, during which, &c. After a vocative, *der, die, das*, is always used, and in the nominative, when it refers to the first or second person, it is followed by its corresponding personal pronoun; as, *O du, der du von Ewigkeit bist*, O thou, who art from eternity.

The relative pronoun *wer, was*, never refers to a definite object, and is used only in the singular; as, *Ich verstehe nicht, was du sagst*, I do not understand what you say. Instead of *wer* for the masculine gender, we may also say, *derjenige welcher* or *der welcher*, he who, whosoever; and instead of *wer* for the feminine gender, we can likewise say, *diejenige welche* or *die welche*, she who.

10. The interrogative pronoun *welcher*, like the relative, is used either in immediate connexion with a noun, or in reference to a definite object; whilst *wer* and *was* are used without a noun, and only when we ask a question in a general manner; as, *Welches Buch wollen Sie mir geben?* Which book will you give me? *Was sagen Sie?* What do you say? *Welcher von diesen Herrn ist Ihr Bruder?* Which of these gentlemen is your brother? *Wer ist das?* Who is that?

11. When the relative pronoun is ambiguous, it sometimes becomes necessary to make use of a circumlocution. Did we for instance say, *die Kinder, welche ihre Eltern lieben*, it might be doubtful, whether *welche* be the nominative or accusative. Such an ambiguity, however, can be easily avoided by using the passive voice; as, *Die Kinder, welche von ihren Eltern geliebt werden*, The children, who are loved by their parents.

12. In English, the relative pronoun is sometimes omitted; but in German, this cannot be done; as, the letter you wrote me, *der Brief, welchen du mir schriebeest*.

13. In English, to point out one of several objects of the same kind, a common noun is very frequently followed by an absolute possessive pronoun; as, He is a friend of mine; but in German we must say, *Er ist mein Freund*, or *Er ist einer meiner Freunde*.

14. In familiar language, the dative of the personal pronouns is sometimes inserted, merely as an expletive; as, *du wirst (mir) ein feiner Gast werden*, you will become a fine fellow (to me, i. e. in my opinion).

15. In German, at the beginning of a sentence, the neuter pronoun *es* very often corresponds to the English *there*, and sometimes it is merely an expletive; as, *Es giebt viele Leute*, There are many people; *Es war Niemand hier*, No one was here.

16. Sometimes, for the sake of emphasis, the personal pronoun is repeated after a noun in the nominative; as, *der süße Schlaf, er flieht die Unglücklichen*, sweet sleep flies from the unfortunate.

17. In German, the conjunctive possessive pronoun is sometimes put after the genitive; as, *der Mutter ihr Haus*, the mother's (her) house. But the possessive pronoun in such a connexion is entirely useless and should be omitted.

## CHAPTER IV.

### VERBS.

#### (§ 121.) A. *Numbers and Persons.*

1. The verb must agree with its subject in number and person; as, *ich gehe*, I go; *du gehst*, thou goest; *ihr geht*, you go; &c.

**REMARK.** — In English, collective nouns have frequently the verb in the plural; as, "The majority perished in the waves." This deviation from the preceding rule does not occur in German, except in a few instances, which should not be imitated. In German, on the other hand, titles of address, such as *Majestät*, *Excellenz*, *Hoheit*, and similar terms, have the verb in the plural; as, *Wollen Eure Majestät gnädigst geruhen?* Will your Majesty graciously be pleased?\*

\* In German, nouns are sometimes used collectively in the singular number, whilst in English, the plural is required; as, *die Deutsche und Englische Sprache*, the German and English language (in English—lan-

2. When a verb refers to several subjects, it is commonly put in the plural number; as, *Der Löwe und der Hase schlafen mit offenen Augen*, The lion and the hare sleep with open eyes. When the several subjects are of different persons, the verb is put in the first person plural, if at least one of them be of the first person; but, if they are of the second and third persons, the verb is put in the second person plural; as, *Du, dein Vater und ich sind eingeladen*, You, your father, and I have been invited; *Du und dein Bruder vermöget viel*, You and your brother avail much.

3. Sometimes several subjects of the singular number may also have the verb in the singular, either because they are viewed collectively, or because the verb agreeing with one, is left to be supplied to the rest; as, *Der Vernünftige und der Tugendhafte ist glücklich*, The rational and the virtuous are happy; *Trägheit und Bosheit straft sich selbst*, Indolence and malice punish themselves. This kind of agreement particularly occurs in German, when the verb precedes the subject; as, *Ist dein Vater und deine Mutter gestorben?* Are your father and your mother dead? In these and similar sentences, the plural number of the verb is not only correct, but according to some grammarians, it should be preferred.

4. In the imperative, the first person plural and the third person of both numbers, have always the corresponding personal pronouns after them; but the second person, singular and plural, is used without the pronouns, except for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *Sagen Sie mir gefälligst*, Tell me, if you please; *Gebet Acht, meine Kinder*, Pay attention, my children; *Thue es, mein Sohn*, Do it, my son; *Ich kann es nicht thun, thue du es*, I cannot do it, do you do it.

5. In poetry and in familiar language, the pronouns of the first and second persons are sometimes omitted, but the third person very rarely; as, *Willst's nicht lassen, will dich fassen*, instead of: *Du willst es nicht lassen, ich will dich fassen*, Thou wilt not quit it, I will seize thee; *Bist (bist du) untreu Wilhelm oder todt?* Art thou faithless William, or dead?

---

guages); *die rothe und weiße Farbe*, the red and white colour (in English—colours). In these and similar phrases, we may presume an elliptical omission of the noun after the first adjective. So also we say, *Hundert Soldaten verloren ihr Leben*, A hundred soldiers lost their life (in English—lives).

(§ 122.) B. *Tenses.*

I. *Present Tense.*

The present tense is used :

1. When we ascribe to a subject a predicate which is essential to it ; as, *Der Mensch ist sterblich*, Man is mortal.

2. When we speak of an action or event, which is applicable to the subject at the present moment ; as, *Die Sonne geht unter*, The sun sets.

3. In speaking of an action as habitually repeated till the present time ; as, *Er geht des Morgens spazieren*, He takes a walk in the morning.

For the sake of emphasis, the present tense is sometimes used :

a. Instead of the future ; as, *In einer Stunde reisen wir ab*, In one hour we depart, *i. e.* in one hour we shall depart.

b. Instead of the imperfect ; as, *Plötzlich entsteht ein großes Geräusch, wir sehen nach ; was war es ? Die Katze jagte einer Maus nach*, Suddenly there arises a great noise, we look, what was it ? The cat was chasing a mouse.

c. In place of the imperative ; as, *Du gehst heute nicht aus*, You do not go out to-day, *i. e.* You shall not go out to-day.

II. *Imperfect.*

The imperfect tense always directs the mind to past time, to view an action or event as then occurring.\* Accordingly this tense is used :

1. In speaking of an action or event as happening, whilst another took place ; as, *Wir reisten ab, als die Sonne aufging*, We departed when the sun was rising.

2. In narrating ; hence, the imperfect is sometimes called the historical tense. *Ich sah ihn fallen, lief hinzu, und fand ihn todt*, I saw him fall, ran thither and found him dead.

---

\* Hence the name "imperfect," because the action is incomplete at the time it is viewed ; although with reference to the present, it may have been long since finished.

3. When a past action implies a repetition, or a continuance for a certain length of time; as, *Friederich der Große stand in der Regel sehr früh auf*, Frederick the Great generally arose very early.

### III. Perfect.

The perfect tense, as its name indicates, simply denotes the completion of an action, the effect of which still remains; as, *Die Vereinigten Staaten haben sich von Europa losgerissen*, The United States have separated themselves from Europe.

### OBSERVATIONS.

The imperfect and perfect tenses are very often confounded. In the south of Germany the perfect, and in the north, the imperfect prevails. But the difference of these two tenses seems to be obvious, even from the grammatical form of the perfect, which is compounded of the present tense *haben* or *sein*, and of the past participle. Accordingly, the perfect tense implies the idea both of present and past time, and hence we deduce the following consequences:

1. If the constituent parts of a sentence exclusively refer to past time, the imperfect tense must be used; as, *Napoleon starb 1821*, Napoleon died in 1821.

2. If the constituent parts of a sentence partly imply the idea of present, and partly of past time, either the imperfect or the perfect tense may be used, according as present or past time is principally viewed and dwelt upon. Thus, by saying: *„Die Pyramiden wurden von den Aegyptischen Königen erbaut*, The pyramids were built by the Egyptian kings,” we refer principally to their origin; but by saying: *Die Pyramiden sind von den Aegyptischen Königen erbaut worden*, we view the pyramids as now existing.

3. From what precedes, it is evident that in many cases both the imperfect and perfect may be correct, and that the choice depends on the manner in which the sentence is viewed. In cases of this kind, the imperfect tense has the preference in connexion of several sentences, and also when the particular point of time is mentioned; as, *Der Deutsche Bund wurde im Jahr 1815 gestiftet*, The German alliance was formed in the year 1815. But if the sentence does not refer to a particular time,

or if it stands absolutely, the perfect is preferred; as, *Belgien hat sich von Holland getrennt*, Belgium has separated from Holland.

4. A person speaking of what he has seen, commonly uses the imperfect, since, during the statement, his mind rests principally on past time; but a person, repeating what he has been told, commonly uses the perfect, because it is only the related fact that engages his attention. Therefore, should we say: „*Er starb letzte Woche*, He died last week,” we should indicate that we had been present at his death; but if we say: *Er ist vorige Woche gestorben*, we intimate that we were not present.

#### IV. Pluperfect.

The pluperfect tense represents an action not only as past, but also as prior to some other point of time specified in the sentence; as, *Nachdem die Sonne untergegangen war, kehrten wir zur Stadt zurück*, After the sun had set, we returned to the city.

#### V. First Future.

The first future represents the action as yet to come, either with or without respect to the precise time; as, *Mein Bruder wird künftige Woche zurückkommen*, My brother will return next week.

#### VI. Second Future.

The second future intimates that the action will be fully accomplished at or before the time of another future action or event; as, *Er wird morgen Nachmittag um drei Uhr zurückgekommen sein*, He will have returned by three o'clock to-morrow afternoon.

REMARK.—The second future sometimes denotes probability; as, *Du wirst diese Geschichte gewiß schon gehört haben*, You certainly (will) have heard the news.

### C. *Moods.*

#### (§ 123.) I. Indicative Mood.

The indicative affirms or denies, that something is, has been, or will be; or, it asks a question in a direct manner; hence it is used in all absolute sentences, and also in those dependent sentences which convey the idea of certainty and reality.

*Examples.*

Gott ist allmächtig.	God is omnipotent.
Ist Ihr Bruder zurückgekommen?	Has your brother returned?
Er wird morgen zurückkommen.	He will return to-morrow.
Die Mumien zeigen, daß die Bildung der Aegyptier nicht schön war.	The mummies show, that the form of the Egyptians was not beautiful.

## (§ 124.) II. Subjunctive Mood.

The subjunctive denotes uncertainty, doubt, or mere possibility, and therefore can occur only in those dependent sentences which convey those ideas, no matter with what conjunctions they commence, for conjunctions never govern, but only the ideas conveyed. Accordingly, the subjunctive is commonly used :

1. After those verbs, which imply a doubt as to an event. Verbs of this kind are: *befehlen*, to order; *bitten*, to request; *rathen*, to advise; *ermahnen*, to exhort; *besorgen*, to apprehend; *bedingen*, to make conditions; *fürchten*, to fear; *scheinen*, to appear; *hoffen*, to hope; *wünschen*, to wish; *wollen*, to desire; *zulassen*, to admit; *verbieten*, to forbid; *verhindern*, to prevent.

*Examples.*

Ich wünsche, daß er glücklich werde.	I wish that he may become happy.
Er fürchtet, daß er Strafe erhalten werde.	He is afraid of being punished.
Verhüten Sie, daß er auf das Eis gehe.	Prevent him from going on the ice.

2. In those dependent sentences which denote a wish, intention, or design; as,

Ich sage es, damit du es wissest.	I say it, that you may know it.
Sprich laut, damit er dich verstehe.	Speak loud, that he may understand you.

3. When we quote the words or opinions of another person, not in a direct, but in an indirect manner ; as,

**Er meldete mir, daß er sich verheirathet habe.** He informed me that he had been married.

In sentences of this kind, the subjunctive indicates that we either doubt the words quoted, or that we simply repeat them without wishing to vouch for their reality. But to indicate that what is quoted, is true and unquestionable, the indicative is used ; as, **Er schrieb mir, daß er sich verheirathet hat.**

4. In giving our own sentiments in an indirect and reflecting manner, to indicate, either that our opinion differs from that of others, or that we doubt, or change our former opinion ; as,

**Ich glaubte, daß ich alles recht gemacht hätte, aber ich irrte mich.** I thought that I had done every thing right, but I was mistaken.

**Ich bewies ihm, daß es seine Pflicht sei.** I proved to him, that it was his duty.

The indicative is to be used, when we repeat our own words, or those of others, in a direct and positive manner, *i. e.* in the form of an absolute sentence ; as, **Ich habe, sagte er, viel gelitten,** I have, he replied, suffered much.

5. When a sentence rests merely on a supposition or condition ; as, **Ohne Liebe würde die thierische Welt zu Grunde gehen,** Without love, the animal world could not exist ; **Ich würde es thun, wenn ich es könnte,** I would do it, if I could.

#### (§ 125.) REMARKS.

1. In sentences such as those mentioned under No. 3. and 4., the conjunction **daß** is very frequently omitted, and then, although the subjunctive is retained, the collocation of the verb is as in absolute sentences ; hence the dependent sentences quoted under those numbers, may also be expressed thus : **Er meldete mir, er habe sich verheirathet ; Ich glaubte, ich hätte alles recht gemacht ; Ich bewies ihm, es sei seine Pflicht.**

2. In dependent sentences, when we quote our own words or those of others, after an imperfect or perfect, we frequently use the present, perfect, or future, in case these tenses would be used

in conveying the idea in a direct manner, *i. e.* in form of an absolute sentence; as, *Ich sagte ihm, es werde geschehen*, I told him that it would happen; *Er schrieb mir, er wolle kommen*, He wrote to me, that he would come.

3. The conjunction *wenn* is frequently omitted, and then the verb is placed at the beginning of the sentence; but if compound, the auxiliary alone stands at the beginning, and the other part at the end. When this omission takes place in the imperfect or pluperfect, the verb is put in the subjunctive; but when in the present tense, the indicative is used; as, *Wäre ich an Ihrer Stelle*, instead of, *Wenn ich an Ihrer Stelle wäre*, were I in your place; *Hättest du dieses gethan*, instead of, *Wenn du dieses gethan hättest*, If you had done this.

4. Not only the conjunction *daß*, but also the principal verb denoting a wish, concession, or supposition, is sometimes omitted, so that the dependent sentence with the verb in the subjunctive mood, stands by itself like an absolute sentence. Thus the phrase: *„Gott gebe es*, God grant it,” is equal to: *Ich wünsche, daß Gott es gebe*. So likewise: *„Er thue, was er wolle*, He may do what he pleases,” stands instead of: *Ich gestatte, daß er thue, was er wolle*; and the following phrase: *„Es wäre Schade*, it would be a pity,” is the same as: *Ich glaube, daß es Schade wäre*. In the same manner the following sentences may be resolved: *Ohne Liebe würde die thierische Welt zu Grunde gehen*; *Ich würde es thun, wenn ich es könnte*.

5. The characteristic of the subjunctive is doubt and uncertainty. But as persons differ in their views, it follows, that in the same sentence, one person may use the indicative, while another employs the subjunctive, and both may be correct; but the ideas conveyed will be different. Thus, the sentence: *„Ich suche einen Freund, der mir helfen wird*, I seek a friend who will assist me,” indicates that I have a certain friend in view, of whom I know for certain, that he will assist me; but the sentence: *Ich suche einen Freund, der mir helfen werde*, implies a doubt, whether I shall be able to find a friend who will be able or willing to assist me.

(§ 126.) III. Infinitive Mood.\*

The infinitive is used either without the particle *zu* or with it.

a. The infinitive is used without *zu*:

1. When it stands absolutely, as in the dictionary; as, *lesen*, to read; *loben*, to praise.

2. When it is the subject of the sentence; as, *Berühmt werden ist keine Kunst*, To become distinguished is not difficult.

3. When it holds the place of an accusative, as it does in connexion with the following verbs: *können*, to be able; *lassen*, to let; *mögen*, to like; *müssen*, to be compelled; *sollen*, to be obliged; *wollen*, to wish; *heißen*, to order; *helfen*, to help; *lehren*, to teach; *lernen*, to learn; *hören*, to hear; *sehen*, to see; *fühlen*, to feel.

REMARK.—The infinitives, *können*, *lassen*, *mögen*, &c., are used instead of their past participle, when another infinitive precedes; as, *Er hat es nicht thun wollen*; but without *thun*, we would say: *Er hat es nicht gewollt*. *Lehren* and *lernen* in connexion with an infinitive, may also form the past participle regularly; as, *Ich habe ihn kennen lernen* or *gelernt*. Compare § 65. 7.

4. In connexion with the verbs, *bleiben*, to continue; *gehen*, to go; *finden*, to find; *fahren*, to ride (in a carriage); *reiten*, to ride (on horseback); *sich legen*, to lay down; *machen*, to make or cause; *thun*, to do (with *nichts als*, after it); as, *Er bleibt liegen*, He continues lying; *Ich fand das Buch auf dem Tische liegen*, I found the book lying on the table; *Sie machten mich lachen*, They made me laugh; *Wir gehen oft spazieren*, We very often go out to walk; *Er thut nichts als schlafen*, He does nothing but sleep.

5. In these and similar phrases: *Du hast gut reden*, You may well say so; *Sie haben Geld auf Zinsen stehen*, They have money out on interest; *Hier ist übel (schlecht, gut) wohnen*, It is ill (bad, good) to dwell here.

---

\* Under § 129, we shall see that the infinitive commonly holds the last place in every phrase and in every sentence; and, when two infinitives meet, the one governed precedes the governing one.

**b. The infinitive is used with *zu* :**

1. After adjectives and substantives, which in English are followed either by *to* with the infinitive, or by *of* with the participle ; as, *Ich hatte das Vergnügen ihn zu sehen*, I had the pleasure of seeing him ; *Ich war froh ihn zu sehen*, I was glad to see him ; *Ich bin müde es zu hören*, I am tired of hearing it.

2. After verbs which express an intention or design ; as, *Ich komme mit Ihnen zu sprechen*, I come to speak to you.

3. After the following verbs : *anfangen*, to commence ; *aufhören*, to cease ; *befehlen*, to order ; *erkennen*, to acknowledge (with the infinitive perfect) ; *erlauben*, to permit ; *ermangeln*, to fail ; *drohen*, to threaten ; *fürchten*, to fear ; *gestatten*, to allow ; *haben*, to have ; *hoffen*, to hope ; *pflegen*, to use ; *behaupten*, to maintain ; *bekennen*, to confess (with the infinitive perfect) ; *bitten*, to request ; *erwarten*, to expect ; *verdienen*, to deserve ; *verlangen*, to desire ; *wünschen*, to wish ; *wagen*, to venture ; *wissen*, to know ; *scheinen*, to seem ; *sein*, to be ; *nutzen*, *helfen* and *frommen*, when they signify to be useful.

4. After the prepositions *statt*, or *anstatt*, instead of ; *ohne*, without ; *um*, in order ; as, *Er ging weg, ohne ein Wort zu sagen*, He went away, without saying a word.

**REMARKS.**

1. Sometimes an English infinitive is to be translated into German by a dependent sentence with *daß* ; as, I know this to be the case ; *Ich weiß, daß dieß der Fall ist* ; Do you believe this to be true ? *Glauben Sie, daß dieses wahr sei ?*

2. So likewise in English, the infinitive with *to* is used after such words as, where, when, how, which, what, whose, whom, when the verbs to know, to tell, to be told, and the like precede ; but, in German, we again use a dependent sentence with some proper auxiliary verb, such as, *müssen*, *sollen*, &c. ; as, They do not know what to do, *Sie wissen nicht, was sie anfangen sollen* ; I will tell you what to do, *Ich will Ihnen sagen, was Sie thun müssen*.

Sometimes the infinitive after *how* is also translated into German by an infinitive, but then *how* in English, can not be expressed in German ; as, *Er weiß sich nicht zu benehmen*, He does not know how to conduct himself.

3. *Lassen*, *heißen* and *befehlen*, to order, are followed in German by the infinitive active, whether the person to whom orders are given, be expressed or understood; but in English, the infinitive passive is used, when the person who is ordered, is not mentioned; as, *Brutus ließ seine Söhne hinrichten*, Brutus ordered his sons to be put to death. So also the auxiliary verb *sein* is followed, in German, by the infinitive active; as, *Es ist kein Friede zu finden, als nur bei Gott*, No peace is to be found, except with God.

4. The infinitive of every verb may be used as a substantive; as, *das Leben*, life.

## SECOND PART OF SYNTAX.

### COLLOCATION OF WORDS.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### COLLOCATION OF WORDS IN ABSOLUTE SENTENCES.

###### A. COMMON COLLOCATION.

###### (§ 127.) *General Rules.*

1. The subject with all its adjuncts holds the first place of the sentence.

2. The verb holds the second place,\* and, in its simple tenses, it is followed by all its adjuncts; but, in compound tenses, the auxiliary verb alone holds the second place, whilst the past participle or the infinitive mood is removed to the end.

###### *Examples.*

<i>Krösus, ein König von Lydien,</i>	<i>Cræsus, king of Lydia, who</i>
<i>der im sechsten Jahrhunderte</i>	<i>lived in the sixth century be-</i>
<i>vor Christi Geburt lebte, hatte</i>	<i>fore Christ, had immense</i>
<i>unermeßliche Reichthümer.</i>	<i>riches.</i>

\* For the exceptions to this rule see § 134.

Die Könige von Frankreich sind von den Königen von England oft besiegt worden.	The kings of France have been often conquered by the kings of England.
Ich werde morgen nach Eu- ropa abreisen.	To-morrow I shall start for Europe.

*Particular Rules for the Position of Adjuncts.*

(§ 128.) I. ADJUNCTS OF THE NOUN.

1. The article, and those pronouns which directly qualify a noun, are always placed immediately before the noun to which they belong, unless the noun should be preceded by other qualifying terms; as, *der Mann, jener Herr, dieses Wetter.\**

REMARK.—Sometimes *all* follows after the noun to which it belongs, and then the noun requires the article; as, *die Menschen alle.†* When *all* precedes the noun, it precedes also the article. Commonly, however, the article is omitted after *all*; but it is retained before possessive pronouns used substantively, and frequently before adjectives used in the same manner; as, *alle die Meinigen, alles (das) Gute, alle (die) Guten.*

2. Adjectives and participles, preceded by their own qualifying terms, are placed immediately before the noun which they qualify, and the article or pronoun of the noun thus qualified, is put first of all; as, *ein Rache forderndes Gespenst*, a revenge-demanding spirit; *mein jüngst verstorbener Vater*, my lately deceased father; *der seinen Nächsten liebende und Gott gehorchende Mensch*, verdient unsere Achtung, the man who loves his neighbour, and obeys God, deserves our esteem.

REMARK. — Should the sentence, however, read harshly by multiplying the qualifying terms before a noun, it will be better to make use of dependent sentences. Thus, the last sentence would read better in the following form: *Der*

\*In *Vater unser*, the beginning of the Lord's Prayer, the pronoun *unser*, is the genitive plural.

†*All* is always put after the personal and relative pronouns; as, *sie alle, wir alle, welche alle.*

**Mensch, welcher seinen Nächsten liebt und Gott gehorcht, verdient unsere Achtung.\***

3. Numerals follow after the article and pronouns; but they precede all other adjuncts of the noun; as, **Jene vier in den Wellen verunglückten Kinder, waren die Hoffnung ihrer Eltern**, Those four children, lost in the waves, were the hope of their parents. When cardinal and ordinal numbers come together, the former commonly precede the latter; as, **die vier ersten**; but for the sake of emphasis, the ordinal numbers may precede the cardinals; as, **die ersten vier**. So likewise the words, **die andern, die letzten**, and adjectives of the superlative degree, although they are commonly placed after the cardinal numbers, may precede them for the sake of emphasis; as, **die vier schönsten**, or emphatically, **die schönsten vier**.†

4. The genitive commonly follows after the substantive by which it is governed; as, **Das Herz des Volkes ist in den Händen großer Männer**, The heart of the people is in the hands of great men. When nouns, however, for the sake of emphasis, are preceded by the genitive which they govern, they lose their article; as, **Des Dorfes Kinder hüpfen achtlos auf der Mutter Grab**, The children of the village play thoughtlessly upon the grave of their mother.

5. A noun may also be qualified by words in apposition to it, or by a substantive with a preposition, or by a simple adverb, which in German commonly have the same position as in English; as, **Der Professor Schleiermacher ist ein tiefer Denker**, Professor Schleiermacher is a deep thinker; **Scipio, ein edler Römer, zerstörte Carthago**, Scipio, a noble Roman, destroyed Carthage; **Wallensteins furchtbare Erscheinung vor Berlin, brachte den Churfürsten von Brandenburg zur Unterwerfung**, Wallenstein's formidable appearance before Berlin, brought the electoral prince of Brandenburg to submission; **Dieser Mann hier oder jener da, kann es dir sagen**, This man here, or that one there can tell you so.

---

\* In English, the article is sometimes inserted between an adjective and its noun; as, half an hour; both the houses; but this is not done in German except in the case of all.

† When cardinal numbers govern the genitive of a personal pronoun, they are placed after it; as, **unser vier**, four of us.

6. Finally, a noun may be qualified by an infinitive mood, or by a dependent sentence, of which we shall speak particularly hereafter; as, *Die Kunst gut zu sprechen, erfordert Uebung,* The art of speaking well requires practice; *Alles was Gott thut, besteht immer,* All that God does, lasts forever.

## II. ADJUNCTS OF THE VERB.

### (§ 129.) 1. *Infinitive Mood.*

The infinitive mood is commonly preceded by all its adjuncts, and they are situated nearer to it, in proportion as they are more nearly related to it. Commonly, the adjuncts of time precede those of place, and both precede all the others. In conformity with this construction, the word governed precedes the word governing, and the qualifying terms precede those which are qualified. If there are several infinitives, the principal one holds the last place.

#### *Examples.*

*Der Deutschen Sprache mächtig sein.* To be master of the German language.  
*Zwanzig Jahr alt sein.* To be twenty years old.

In these two examples, the adjective before the infinitive is preceded by the case it governs.

*Die Lateinische Sprache sehr fleißig studiren.* To study the Latin language very diligently.

The adverb *sehr fleißig*, being more closely related to the verb than the preceding accusative is, must be placed nearer to it.

*Diesen Mann einen Dieb nennen.* To call this man a thief.

The accusative, *einen Dieb*, together with the verb, constitutes but one main idea, which is applied to the first accusative, as to a particular person. Hence, the first accusative, being subject to the second, must precede it.

*Gestern von Europa zurückgekehrt sein.* To have returned yesterday from Europe.

The separable particle *zurück* forms, as it were, a part of the verb, and therefore it stands nearer to it, than any other adjunct does, and it is on account of this close connection, that the separable particle is written with the verb as one word.

**Einen Doctor kommen lassen.** To send for a physician.

Inasmuch as the accusative is less directly governed by the principal verb *lassen*, than the infinitive *kommen* is, the former must be further off than the latter.

**Alle Tage und zu jeder Stunde  
spazieren gehen wollen, heißt  
die Arznei zur gewöhnlichen  
Speise machen.** To wish to walk daily and  
hourly, would be, to make  
medicine our common food.

In this sentence, we first meet with terms referring to time, and then follow three infinitives, which precede each other in the order of their dependence: in the following part, the phrase, *zur gewöhnlichen Speise*, together with the infinitive *machen*, constitutes but one general idea, which is applied to the preceding accusative, *Arznei*. Hence the latter, being subject to the former, must precede it.

**REMARK.**—Participles also, are commonly preceded by their adjuncts in the same manner as the infinitive mood; as, *Kleist, von seinen Zeitgenossen kalt bewundert, aber gewiß von der spätesten Nachwelt gepriesen*, Kleist, coldly admired by his contemporaries, but certainly esteemed by posterity.

## (§ 130.) 2. *Finite Tenses.*

In the finite tenses, the adjuncts are placed in an order, the very reverse of the one they have in the infinitive; for they all follow after the verb, and they are placed further off, in proportion as they are more nearly related to it: accordingly, in compound tenses, the past participle and infinitive occupy the last place, since they are more nearly related to the auxiliary verb, than any other adjunct is.

Comparing this rule with the preceding, we perceive that the adjuncts of the verb retain the same order, with respect to each other, both in the infinitive mood and in the finite tenses, and that it is only the verb which changes its position. Hence, to form a sentence from an infinitive with any number of ad-

juncts, all that we have to do, is, to take the verb, or if compounded, to take its auxiliary part from the end,\* and put it at the very beginning of the adjuncts, and make it agree in person and number with a nominative, which is to be supplied; as,

*General Form.*

Auf sein Leben und Gesundheit  
fleißig Acht geben müssen,  
To be obliged to pay much  
attention to one's life and  
health.

*Complete Sentence.*

Man muß auf sein Leben und  
Gesundheit fleißig Acht ge-  
ben, One must pay much  
attention to his life and  
health.

On the other hand, we may reduce a sentence to a general form, by omitting the nominative and putting the verb in the infinitive at the end; as,

*Complete Sentence.*

Wir müssen in unsrer Jugend  
einen guten Gebrauch von  
unsrer Zeit machen, We must  
make good use of our time  
in our youth.

*General Form.*

In unsrer Jugend von unsrer  
Zeit einen guten Gebrauch  
machen müssen,† To be ob-  
liged to make good use of  
our time in our youth.

(§ 131.) In order to render the student more familiar with the Position of Adjuncts, we shall apply the preceding Rule to several Adjuncts in different Cases.

**I. An Adjective Predicate, ascribed to its Subject by means of the Verb Sein :**

Mein Bruder war diesen Mor-  
gen in der Kirche seiner re-  
ligiösen Pflicht nicht sehr  
eingedenk.

My brother was this morning  
not very mindful of his re-  
ligious duties in church.

---

\* If there be more than one auxiliary, take only the last one.

† In the infinitive mood with any number of adjuncts, the gradual ascent from the less to the more important parts, gradually increases the attention of the reader. In absolute, but particularly in dependent sentences, the most important and essential parts, being put partly at the beginning and partly at the end, attract by their position the attention of the reader more than the accidental terms, which are placed between them. The collocation of words, in German, is admired by the best linguists.

In this sentence, the predicate **eingedenk**, being the principal part, ascribed to the subject, by means of the verb **sein**, holds the last place, having before it the negative adverb **nicht sehr**, by which it is directly qualified. The predicate, thus qualified, governs the preceding genitive, **seiner religiösen Pflicht**; and before this, we find accidental adjuncts, referring to place and time.

<b>Selbstzufriedenheit ist zur Glückseligkeit unentbehrlich.</b>	Self-contentedness is essential to happiness.
<b>Die Pyramide des Cheops, Königs von Aegypten, war achthundert Fuß hoch.</b>	The pyramid of Cheops, king of Egypt, was eight hundred feet high.

## II. *A Verb in Connection with Nouns preceded by Prepositions:*

<b>Der Gefühllose blieb, an diesem Tage (time), auf der schönsten Flur (place), bei aller Schönheit der Natur (circumstance of time and place), ohne Empfindung.</b>	The insensible man remained this day, on the most beautiful plain, unmoved by all the beauties of nature.
--	---

The substantive phrase, **ohne Empfindung**, conveying together with the verb the main idea, holds the last place, whilst the other substantives with their prepositions, being more accidental terms, precede. Moreover, **ohne Empfindung** is equivalent to the adjective, **empfindungslos**, which, if substituted in place of it, would as a predicate hold the last place.

## III. *A Verb qualified by several Adverbs:*

<b>Der Wind wehete heute früh (time) bei uns (place), überaus heftig.</b>	This morning, the wind was blowing very violently, at our place.
---	--

The adverb **heftig**, qualified by **überaus**, stands last, because it has the closest connection with the verb.

**REMARK.** — If an adverb (except separable particles), and a substantive with a preposition come together, and seem from their importance to deserve the same place, the adverb commonly precedes the noun with its preposition; as,

Wir kamen glücklich in unsrer Stadt an, We arrived safe in our city; Ich schreibe gut mit dieser Feder, I write well with this pen.

#### IV. *A Verb governing one Objective Case.*

1. The objective case follows after the verb, and if it be a personal pronoun, it precedes all the other adjuncts of the verb; as,

Ich sah ihn gestern Morgen in Philadelphia. I saw him yesterday morning in Philadelphia.

Ein böser Mensch erinnert sich zuweilen mit bitterem Schmerze an seine schlechten Thaten. A wicked person sometimes remembers his base actions with bitter grief.

2. If the object be a substantive, it is generally preceded by those terms which refer to time, and followed by the rest; as,

Ich erhielt diesen Morgen einen Brief aus Deutschland. I received a letter from Germany this morning.

**REMARK.** — If the object, together with the verb, expresses but one main idea which is applied to substantives with prepositions, it generally follows after them; as, Viele angesehenere Römer nahmen an der Verschwörung des Catilina gegen die Republik einen sehr thätigen Antheil, Many distinguished Romans took a very active part in the conspiracy of Catiline against the Republic. The verb *nahmen*, and the accusative *Antheil*, hold almost the same relation to the substantive phrases included between them, that an auxiliary verb and a past participle or infinitive hold to the object which they include. But it would not be wrong, but rather emphatic, to place the object immediately after the verb.

#### V. *A Verb governing two Objective Cases.*

1. If a verb governs a dative and an accusative, the dative commonly precedes the accusative; as,

Ich gebe meinem Freunde einen Rath. I give an advice to my friend.

## REMARKS.

a. If the accusative be a personal pronoun, it always precedes the dative; as, *Gieb es deinem Bruder*, Give it to your brother; *Gieb es mir*, Give it to me.

b. The accusative, having a possessive pronoun before it, may also precede the dative, unless the latter should be a personal pronoun; as,

*Er vermachte sein Vermögen fremden Personen.*      He left his property to strangers.

2. If a verb governs a genitive and an accusative, the accusative precedes the genitive; as,

*Man überführte den Verflagten verschiedener Missethaten.*      They convicted the accused of several crimes.

3. If a verb governs two accusatives, the one which indicates the particular person or thing, commonly precedes the other; as,

*Du nanntest mich deinen Freund.*      You called me your friend.

*Du nanntest deinen Freund einen guten Mann.*      You called your friend a good man.

The second object and the verb constitute but one main idea, which is applied to the first object; and the relation they hold to it, is the same as that which the participle and auxiliary verb hold to the case which they include. Hence, the second object commonly holds the last place in the sentence, unless it is followed by a separable particle, an infinitive or a past participle.

4. When both objective cases are personal pronouns, they generally follow immediately after the verb; as,

*Ich gab es ihm gestern Morgen in meinem Zimmer.*      I gave it to him yesterday morning in my room.

## VI. *A Verb compounded with a Separable Particle.*

The separable particle, being more closely connected with the verb than any of the adjuncts already mentioned, holds the

last place, unless it should be followed by the past participle, or the infinitive mood; as,

Mein Vater kam gestern Abend mit seinem Bruder in einem Amerikanischen Schiffe von Europa zurück.	Last night my father returned with his brother in an Ame- rican vessel from Europe.
Er hat alle seine Hefte sehr sauber abgeschrieben.	He has copied all his manu- scripts very neatly.

### VII. *A Verb qualified by an Infinitive or Past Participle.*

An infinitive or a past participle qualifying a verb, holds the last place, unless the past participle or the infinitive of the principal verb should follow it; as,

Spazieren gehen, to take a walk:

Ich ging diesen Morgen mit meinem Freunde spazieren.	I took a walk with my friend this morning.
---	---

Kommen lassen, to order, to come:

Alexander ließ von jedem Lan- de einen Priester kommen.	Alexander ordered a priest to come from every country.
--	---

Geritten kommen, to come riding:

Er kam sehr schnell herbei ge- ritten.*	He came riding up very fast.
--	------------------------------

REMARK. — Sometimes the present infinitive of the principal verb is used instead of the past participle; as, *Ich habe ihn nicht kommen hören*, I did not hear him coming. See § 65. 6.

VIII. *Negation.* — In the simple tenses, the negation *nicht* follows the verb, its accidental adjuncts, and generally its object; but it is followed by the adjective predicate, the separable particles, the adverb directly qualifying the verb, and by the participle and infinitive mood. When there are two or three infinitives, the negation precedes that which is furthest from the end; as,

---

\* So likewise the past participle of some other verbs is joined to the verb *kommen*, in an active signification, to express the manner of coming; as, *gefahren kommen*, to come riding in a carriage; *gelaufen kommen*, to come running; *gegangen kommen*, to come walking.

Dieser Mensch thut seine Pflicht nicht.	This man does not do his duty.
Die Menschen kennen sich einander nicht.	Men do not know each other.
Er ißt die Speise nicht gerne.	He does not like to eat this food.
Er spricht von dir nicht gut.	He does not speak well of you.
Wir können nicht spazieren gehen.	We can not go to walk.

REMARK. — But in contrasting two terms, the negation is placed before that particular word to which it refers ; as, *Geschicklichkeit und Frömmigkeit, nicht Reichthümer, geben dem Menschen wahre Ehre*, Abilities and piety, not riches, confer true honour upon man.

## B. INVERSION.\*

### I. *Inversion of the Adjuncts of the Verb.*

(§ 132.) RULE I. — The different adjuncts of the verb, including the past participle and the infinitive, may, for the sake of emphasis or clearness, be placed nearer or even next to the verb, no matter how far they are separated from it in the common collocation. Accordingly :

1. The past participle and the infinitive, which in the common collocation hold the last place, may be placed nearer to the auxiliary verb ; as,

Er hat ihn erstochen im dunkeln Hain, und den Leib geworfen in den tiefen Rhein.	He stabbed him in the dark forest, and sunk the corpse into the deep Rhine.
Ich habe erfüllt meinen Beruf.	I have discharged my duty.

2. The adjective predicate, which, when the simple tenses are used, commonly holds the last place, is also frequently put before the case which it governs, particularly when it is connected with a preposition ; as,

Er war nicht eingedenk seiner Pflicht.	He was not mindful of his duty.
--	---------------------------------

---

\* That is, deviation from the common collocation.

Er war im ganzen Lande be- He was famous through the  
rühmt wegen seines Reich- whole country for his riches.  
thums.

3. The adverb, which directly qualifies the verb, may precede not only the object, but also other adjuncts; as,

Er studirt sehr fleißig die Deut- He studies the German lan-  
sche Sprache. guage very diligently.

4. The separable particles may precede those adjuncts, by which they are commonly preceded; as,

Er schlug uns ab die kleine He denied us the small favour.  
Bitte.

Er kam zurück von Europa. He returned from Europe.

5. Emphasis may bring the negation, *nicht*, closer to the verb; as,

Er thut nicht seine Pflicht. He does not do his duty.

REMARK. — And thus other adjuncts may precede or follow each other as emphasis requires. Inversions of this kind are also frequently made use of to bring dependent sentences, particularly relative sentences, into close connection with the particular word which they qualify; as, *Ich Herr, ich bin nicht würdig der Gnade, die du mir erzeigt hast!* Alas! Lord, I am not worthy of the grace which thou hast bestowed upon me.

(§ 133.) RULE II. — For the sake of particular emphasis, the adjuncts of the verb may rank first in the sentence, and then the verb precedes the subject. Thus, we may find in the first place:

1. The past participle or the infinitive; as,

Errungen ist der theuere Sieg. The dear victory has been  
gained.

Weinen will ich, so lange noch I will weep as long as life is  
Leben in mir ist. in me.

2. The present participle; as,

Weinend sprach der Vater. The father spoke weeping.

3. A separable particle ; *as*,

Hinstürzt die Mauer sammt dem Thurme.	Down tumbles the wall, to- gether with the tower.
--	--

4. An adjective or noun used as a predicate ; *as*,

Roth wie Blut ist der Himmel. Ein frommer Knabe war Fri- dolin.	The heaven is as red as blood. Fridolin was a pious boy.
---	---

5. Oblique cases ; *as*,

Dem wahren Weltweisen muß der Tod niemals schrecklich sein.	Death must never be formida- ble to a true philosopher.
Einen Apfel lege ich auf das Haupt deines Söhnleins, den schieße herab, und fehle nicht.	I place an apple upon the head of your little boy ; shoot it down and fail not.

6. A noun with a preposition ; *as*,

Ohne Herz ist die Welt aller Freuden leer.	Without a heart, the world is destitute of joys.
---	---

7. An adverb ; *as*,

So schläfst du nun den Todes- schlaf im Grabe.	Thus you now sleep the sleep of death in the grave.
Rasch gallopirt ein Graf her- vor.	Hastily gallops forth a count.

8. The expletive pronoun *es*, which frequently corresponds with the English *there* ; *as*,

Es werden Zeichen geschehen an der Sonne, und Mond und Sternen.	There will be signs in the sun, and moon, and stars.
Es donnern die Höhen.	The heights are thundering.

 (§ 134.) II. *Inversion of the Verb.*

In the following cases the verb holds the first place : in the compound tenses, the auxiliary alone ranks first, whilst the other part is commonly removed to the end :—

1. In direct interrogative sentences ; as,

Ist Ihr Vater zu Hause ?	Is your father at home ?
Haben Sie meinen Brief gelesen ?	Have you read my letter ?
Werden Sie ins Concert gehen ?	Will you go to the concert ?

*Exception.*—If the sentence commences with an interrogative pronoun or an interrogative adverb, the position of the verb is the same as in the common collocation ; as, *Wer hat dieß gethan ?* Who has done this ? *Warum ist Ihr Bruder nicht gekommen ?* Why did your brother not come ?

2. In the imperative mood ; as,

Geben Sie mir eine Feder.	Give me a pen.
Lassen Sie uns zu Bette gehen.	Let us go to bed.

3. In a subsequent sentence, *i. e.* an absolute sentence, preceded by a dependent one ; as,

Als Abel in seinem Blute lag, (da) trat der Cherub des Paradieses zu dem Vater des Menschengeschlechts.	While Abel was lying in his blood, the Cherub of Para- dise came to the father of the human race.
--	--

**REMARK.**—The verb of the subsequent sentence ranks first, because the antecedent one holds the same relation to it, that a subject, object, adverb, or adverbial phrase, in the first place of an absolute sentence, has to its following verb. Hence, in reality, the verb of the subsequent sentence holds the second place, and the dependent sentence the first one. Thus the phrase : „Als es neun Uhr war, fehrte ich nach Hause zurück,“ When it was nine o'clock, I returned home,” is the same as, *Um neun Uhr fehrte ich nach Hause zurück,* At nine o'clock I returned home.\*

4. When *sagen* and similar verbs introduce a quotation, which either wholly or in part precedes them ; as,

Alle meine Wünsche waren erfüllt, sagte er.	All my wishes were gratified, said he.
---	--

---

\* Sometimes the subsequent sentence is introduced by a connecting particle such as, *so*, *da*, *dann*, &c. More particular mention will be made of these particles under § 137. 1.

Aber das schönste, sagte Allwin, war doch der Park. But the most beautiful, said Allwin, was the park.

REMARK.—The verb which introduces a quotation must precede its subject, in order to hold the second place, since the first place is held by the quotation, which may be considered as an accusative case.

5. In sentences, expressing a wish or request; as,  
Wöchten Sie mich doch besuchen! O that you would visit me!  
suchen!

6. Sometimes, when we wish to give more emphasis to an exclamation; as,

Hat der alte Herrenmeister sich doch einmal wegbegeben! At last the old wizard is gone!

Hätte ich doch nimmermehr geglaubt. Never would I have thought.

7. When the nominative has been omitted, as is sometimes done in poetry; as,

Gefällst mir Lamm, sollst leben. Thou pleasest me lamb, thou shalt live.

### (§ 135.) III. *Inversion of Adjectives.*

1. Adjectives, as well as ordinal numbers, are placed after a proper name; and commence with a capital letter, when they are used as a title or mark of distinction; as, Alexander der Große, Alexander the Great; Ludwig der Sechzehnte, Louis the Sixteenth.

2. Adjectives are sometimes placed after a common noun, to render them more emphatic, and by assuming a proper termination, they indicate that the preceding noun is implied; as, Blumen pflückten sie, rothe und weiße, Flowers they gathered, red and white.

3. Adjectives in their absolute form are sometimes placed after a noun, and stand, as it were, in apposition to it; but then they may be considered as an abbreviation of a dependent sentence, which may be restored by supplying the verb *sein*, and a relative pronoun or a proper conjunction. Thus: Ein Mensch, unbeständig in seinen Neigungen, is the same as, Ein Mensch, welcher unbeständig in seinen Neigungen ist, A man (who is) inconstant in his inclinations.

4. Some adjectives referring to places and countries, are placed after their nouns in such phrases as the following: *zehn Fuß Rheinländisch*, ten feet Rhenish; *fünf Pfund Englisch*, five pounds English.

## CHAPTER II.

## COLLOCATION OF WORDS IN DEPENDENT SENTENCES.

 (§ 136.) *General Rules.*

1. The first place in a dependent sentence is held by a relative pronoun, a relative adverb, or a conjunction referring to time or expressing a cause, condition, intention, design, concession, restriction, &c.

2. The second place is generally held by the nominative, unless it be a relative pronoun.

3. The verb holds the last place, and if compounded, the auxiliary is put last of all.

4. The verb is commonly preceded by all its adjuncts, in the same order as in the infinitive mood or in the past participle.

*Examples.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Da ich ein Kind war, rebete ich wie ein Kind.   | When I was a child, I spoke as a child.                                |
| Vergiß des Armen nicht, wenn du einen fröhlichen Tag hast.                                      | Do not forget the poor, when you enjoy a happy day.                    |
| Während wir unser Auge auf die Zeit richten, ist schon wieder ein Theil derselben verschwunden. | Whilst we direct our eye upon time, a part of it has passed.           |
| Daß eine Sprache vor der andern zur Musik geschikt sei, ist wohl unstreitig.                    | That one language is more adapted to music than another, is certain.   |
| Wie die Natur um uns nach Ausbreitung strebt, so auch die Natur in uns.                         | As nature around us strives for development, so does nature within us. |
| Gott deine Güte reicht soweit, soweit die Welten reichen.                                       | God, thy bounty extends as far as the world extends.                   |

## (§ 137.) OBSERVATIONS.

1. Although the subsequent sentence generally commences directly with the verb, it is frequently introduced by a connecting particle, or by a demonstrative pronoun, corresponding with the conjunction, relative pronoun or relative adverb of the antecedent sentence. Thus, the particle *so* commonly corresponds with causal, concessive, conditional, or comparative conjunctions, such as, *da* or *weil*, because; *ob* schon, although; *wenn*, if; *wie*, how; &c. : *dann*, then, corresponds with *wann*, when; *da*, then—with *als*, when; *da*, there—with *wo*, where; *so weit*, so far—with *wie weit*, how far; *desto*, the—with *je*, the (both followed by a comparative); and *daß*, that, corresponds with *was*, what; *der* or *er*, he—with *wer*, who. Examples :

Da du nicht hören willst, so sollst du fühlen.	Since you will not hear, you must feel.
Wenn ich ihn sehe, so will ich es ihm sagen.	When I see him, I will tell him.
Wiewohl sie schön ist, so ist sie doch nicht liebenswürdig.	Although she is beautiful, still she is not amiable.
Je reicher er ist, desto mehr begehrt er.	The richer he is, the more he desires.*

*Exception.*—In the subsequent sentence, the subject is sometimes put before the verb, for the sake of emphasis ; as,

Wärest du früher gekommen, mein Bruder wäre nicht abgereist.	Had you arrived sooner, my brother would not have started off.
--	--

2. In the perfect and pluperfect tenses of dependent sentences, the auxiliary verb is very frequently omitted ; as,

Mein Heiland! Mein Erlöser!	O my Saviour! My Redeemer!
Wie du am Kreuze die Arme	As thou didst extend thy

---

\* Such connecting terms, when not expressed, may always be supplied before the subsequent sentence ; and, like those under § 139. II., they may be considered as holding the first place in the absolute sentence, so that the verb, in order to hold the second place, must follow immediately after them. We may, in this manner, account for the position of the verb in subsequent sentences, so that the reason assigned in the remark under § 134. 3. would be applicable only, if there are no such connecting particles, or if they are simply considered as connecting particles, without constituting a part of the sentence.

ausgespannt (hast), so breite  
sie jetzt aus, mich zu empfan-  
gen.

arms upon the cross, so ex-  
tend them now, to receive  
me.

3. The verb of the dependent sentence may, for the sake of emphasis, follow immediately after, or at least very near to the nominative; as,

Wo zwei versammelt sind in  
meinem Namen, da bin ich  
gegenwärtig unter ihnen.

Where two are assembled in  
my name, there I am present  
among them.

4. An auxiliary verb, connected with two infinitives, commonly precedes them in dependent sentences. The remark under § 65. 7. is also applicable here. Examples:

Da wir das Vergnügen nicht  
werden haben können.

Since we shall not be able to  
have the pleasure.

Als des Aesopus Löwe mit dem  
Esel, der ihm die Thiere  
sollte jagen helfen, nach dem  
Walde ging, &c.

When Aesop's lion went to the  
forest, in company with an  
ass, which was to assist him  
in hunting the animals, &c.

Eine der merkwürdigsten Ge-  
schichten dieser Art, die ich  
nie ohne Staunen habe le-  
sen können, ist die Geschichte  
des alten Malers Francesco .  
Francia.

One of the most remarkable  
narrations of this kind, which  
I could never read without  
astonishment, is the histo-  
ry of the old painter Fran-  
cesco Francia.

5. Some conjunctions, which, when used to introduce a dependent sentence, have a relative meaning, assume a demonstrative signification when they are employed in an absolute sentence. Thus, at the beginning of a dependent sentence, *da* signifies since, because, or when; *so weit*—how far; *indem*—whilst; *seitdem*—since when: but in an absolute sentence, *da* signifies there or thereupon; *so weit*—so far; *indem*—in the mean time; *seitdem*—since that time. So likewise, the same interrogative particle may precede an absolute or dependent sentence, according as the question is asked directly or indirectly.

(§ 138.) In order to render the student more familiar with *Dependent Sentences*, we will classify them according to the *principal Conjunctions*, *relative Pronouns*, or *relative Adverbs*,

with which they commence. At the same time we shall show, how several kinds of sentences may be abbreviated.

I. *Sentences denoting a cause or reason.* The common conjunctions are: *da*, since; *weil*, because. In old writings we find the obsolete conjunctions, *inmaßen* and *sintemal*.

*Da Sie mein Freund sind, so werden Sie mir diesen Gefallen thun.* Since you are my friend, you will do me this favour.

*Ich kann nicht ausgehen, weil ich krank bin.* I cannot go out, because I am sick.

II. *Sentences expressing an intention or design.* The conjunctions are: *damit*, *auf daß*, *darum—daß*, that, in order or for the purpose that.

*Der Philosoph Zeno pflegte zu sagen, daß der Mensch darum zwei Ohren und einen Mund habe, daß er mehr hören als reden solle.* The philosopher Zeno used to say, that man has two ears and but one tongue, in order that he may hear more than speak.

*Ehre Vater und Mutter, auf daß du lange lebest auf Erden.* Honour your father and mother, that you may live long on the earth.

REMARK. — When sentences of this kind have but one subject in common with the sentence on which they depend, the infinitive mood, preceded by the particles *um—zu* (in order that), may be substituted in place of them. Thus, instead of saying: *Viele Menschen üben die Tugend, damit sie gelobt werden*, we may say: *Viele Menschen üben die Tugend, um gelobt zu werden*, Many persons practise virtue, in order to be praised.

III. *Conditional sentences*, which are introduced by the conjunctions *wenn*, *wofern*, *wo*, *so*, *falls*, *if*, *whereas*, *in case*.

*Gute Handlungen haben weder vor Gott noch vor Menschen einen Werth, wenn sie nicht aus reinen Absichten geschehen sind.* Good actions are of no avail before God, or men, unless they have proceeded from pure motives.

*Wenn du dieses thust, so wird es dir gut gehen.* If you do this, you will fare well.

**REMARK.**—When the conjunctions are omitted in this kind of sentences, the verb requires the first place, as in English; and if the verb be compounded, the auxiliary alone is in the first place, whilst the other part is commonly placed last; as, *Wäre ich dabei gewesen, so wäre es nicht geschehen*, Had I been present, it would not have happened.

**IV. Sentences referring to time.** The conjunctions most frequently used, are: *als*, when; *da*, when; *nachdem*, after; *ehe* or *bevor*, before; *sobald* or *sobald als*, as soon as; *sooft* or *sooft als*, as often as; *indem*, whilst; *seitdem*, since; *bis*, till; *wann*, when.

<p><i>Als ein Spartanischer Jüngling in die Schlacht auszog, gab ihm seine Mutter den Schild, mit den Worten: Mit ihm oder auf ihm.</i></p>	<p>When a Spartan youth went to battle, his mother gave him a shield, with these words: (Return) with it or upon it.</p>
---	--

<p><i>Indem wir in den Garten gingen, begegnete uns unser Vater.</i></p>	<p>Whilst we were going into the garden, our father met us.</p>
--	---

**V. Sentences denoting a comparison.** The common conjunctions are: *wie*, how; *gleichwie*, as; *sowie* or *soals*, so as; *gleich als wenn* or *gleich als ob*, just as if; *jenachdem*, according as; *je*, the, before a comparative and always corresponding with *desto*, the.

<p><i>Ihr sollt vollkommen sein, gleichwie Euer Vater im Himmel vollkommen ist.</i></p>	<p>You must be perfect, as your father in heaven is perfect.</p>
---	--

<p><i>Wie die Mutter das Vorbild der Tochter ist, so ist der Vater das Vorbild des Sohns.</i></p>	<p>As the mother is the model of the daughter, so the father is the model of the son.</p>
---	---

<p><i>Je reicher er ist desto reicher will er werden.</i></p>	<p>The richer he is, the richer he wishes to be.</p>
---	--

**VI. Sentences indicating a restriction.** The conjunctions are: *sofern*, *insofern*, *insoweit*, *wiefern*, *inwiefern*, *inwieweit*, as much as, inasmuch as, as far as, in what respect.

<p><i>Ich erlaube es dir, insofern es von mir abhängt.</i></p>	<p>I permit you, as far as it depends upon me.</p>
--	--

<p><i>Ich sehe nicht ein, inwiefern du dabei verlieren könntest.</i></p>	<p>I do not see in what respect you could lose thereby.</p>
--	---

VII. *Sentences denoting an exception.* The conjunctions are; *außer wenn, ausgenommen wenn*, except when; *wenn nicht, wofern nicht*, if not, unless; *nur daß*, except that.

*Ich werde dich morgen besuchen, wenn es nicht regnet.*

*I will visit you to-morrow, unless it should rain.*

*Er ist nicht vergnügt, außer wenn er hinter seinen Büchern sitzt.*

*He is not content, except when he is engaged with his books.*

VIII. *Sentences denoting a concession*, and introduced by the conjunctions: *obzwar, obwohl, obgleich, ob schon, ob auch, wenn gleich, wenn schon, wenn auch, wiewohl, ungeachtet*, although.\*

*Obgleich der Bär einen breiten Fuß hat, und sich im Kampfe aufrecht richtet; obgleich die Affen und Pygmien aufrecht gehen oder laufen, so ist doch dem Menschen dieser Gang beständig und natürlich.*

*Although the bear has a broad foot and raises himself erect in combat; although the ape and pigmy walk or run erect, yet this position is constant and natural to man alone.*

IX. *Sentences commencing with the conjunction daß, and referring to a demonstrative pronoun, or to an adverb compounded of da and a preposition; as, darin, dafür, dadurch, &c.†* In English, this kind of dependent sentences is commonly rendered by a participle with a preposition.

*Das ist die größte Zierde des Menschen, daß er Vernunft hat.*

*The greatest ornament of man is that he possesses reason.*

*Die wahre Philosophie zeigt sich darin, daß wir das Wahre suchen, das Gute thun, und das Schöne lieben.*

*True philosophy is manifested in seeking truth, in doing good, and in loving what is beautiful.*

X. *Sentences commencing with the conjunction daß and denoting an effect or a consequence; as,*

*Die Menge der Sterne ist so groß, daß sie nicht gezählt werden können.*

*The number of the stars is so great, that they cannot be counted.*

\* Several of these compound conjunctions are frequently separated by some intervening word.

† As in Latin: *propterea quod, eo quod, &c.*

**REMARK.**—Adjectives of the positive degree, when preceded by *zu*, too, are in English followed by the infinitive, but in German commonly by a dependent sentence, commencing with *als daß*; as, *Er ist zu fromm, als daß er dieses thun sollte*, He is too pious to do this.

**XI.** *Sentences commencing with the conjunction daß, and having the same relation to the sentence upon which they depend, as a subject to its predicate, or as an accusative to the verb by which it is directly governed; as,*

*Das Unglück der Erde war bis her, daß zwei den Krieg beschloffen, und Millionen ihn ausstanden.*

The misfortune of the world hitherto has been, that two declared war and millions had to endure it.

*Cicero sagt, daß unter bösen Menschen keine Freundschaft bestehen könne.*

Cicero says, that among wicked persons no friendship can exist.

#### REMARKS.

1. When in this kind of sentences, the verb is in the subjunctive mood, the conjunction *daß* may be omitted, and then the position of the verb will be as in absolute sentences; as, *Cicero sagt, unter bösen Menschen könne keine Freundschaft bestehen.*

2. Sometimes also the conjunction *daß* is omitted, when the verb is in the indicative, and then the sentence will not differ from an absolute sentence. Thus, instead of saying: *Ich glaube, daß du Recht hast*, we may also say: *Ich glaube, du hast Recht*, I think (that) you are right.

3. In German, as in English, the sentence commencing with *daß* is sometimes abbreviated by putting the verb in the infinitive. Thus, we may say: *Er versprach, daß er kommen wolle*, or *Er versprach zu kommen*, He promised to come; *Er befahl mir, daß ich ihm folgen sollte*, or *Er befahl mir, ihm zu folgen*, He ordered me to follow him.

**XII.** *Relative sentences*, introduced either by the relative pronouns *welcher, welche, welches*; *der, die, das*; *wer, was*; or by relative adverbs, such as, *wo, wohin, woran, worauf, wozu*, &c.

Er, der die Welt allmächtig hält, wird mich in meinen Tagen, als Gott und Vater tragen.	He who maintains the world by his omnipotence, will support me in all my days, as my God and Father.
Wer Gottes Stimme nicht in seinem Innern vernimmt, dem wird sie auch nicht aus der Natur entgegentönen.	Nature will not re-echo the voice of God to him, who does not hear it within himself.
Jeder sei was er sein kann, dann ist er auch was er sein soll.	Let each one be what he can be, then he will be what he ought to be.
Der Feige droht nur, wo er sicher ist.	The coward threatens only where he is secure.
Ich sehe nicht ein, wohin das führen wird.	I do not see whither this can lead.

## REMARKS.

1. Those relative sentences which have but one subject in common with the sentence to which they refer, and which have an adjective or past participle for a predicate, are frequently abbreviated by omitting the relative pronoun and the connecting verb. Thus, instead of saying: *Die Uhr, welche mit kostbaren Steinen besetzt ist, ist das Geschenk seiner Mutter*, we may say: *Die Uhr, mit kostbaren Steinen besetzt, ist das Geschenk seiner Mutter*, The watch (which is) set with precious stones, is a present from his mother.

2. So likewise, if the predicate is a noun, the relative pronoun and the connecting verb are frequently omitted; and then the noun, previously predicate, will be in apposition with the word to which it refers, and it will agree with it in case. Thus, we may say: *Die Frau des Sokrates, welcher der größte Griechische Philosoph war, hieß Xantippe*, or *Die Frau des Sokrates, des größten Griechischen Philosophen, hieß Xantippe*, The wife of Socrates, (who was) the greatest philosopher of Greece, was called Xantippe.\*

---

\* So likewise other dependent sentences, particularly those denoting a cause or time, are sometimes abbreviated in the same manner as relative sentences. Thus, we may say: *Er irrt in der Welt umher, weil er von seinen Eltern verlassen ist*, or *Von seinen Eltern verlassen, irrt er in der Welt umher*, (Because he is) abandoned by his parents, he wanders abroad in the world. Sentences denoting a circumstance, and having but one

XIII. *The dependent interrogative sentences* differ from the absolute by commonly having the verb at the end; as,

Cicero fragte den Catilina: glaubst du wohl, daß wir nicht wissen, was du in der vorigen Nacht gethan hast? wo du gewesen bist, welche Menschen du zusammengerufen, welche Rathschläge du gefaßt hast?

Cicero asked Catiline: Do you think that we are ignorant of what you did last night; of the place you were at; what persons you assembled; and what plans you concerted?\*

## CHAPTER III.

### (§ 139.) CO-ORDINATE SENTENCES.

Co-ordinate sentences are two or more sentences of the same kind (*i. e.* either all absolute or all dependent), combined together by proper conjunctions.

I. Sentences of the same kind are each of them subject to the same rules as when separate; as,

Gott ist mein Hort, und auf sein Wort soll meine Seele trauen.

God is my protection, and in his word shall my soul confide.

Der Mensch, welcher Gott liebt und (welcher) seine Gebote erfüllt, verdient Achtung.

The person who loves God and (who) obeys his commandments, deserves esteem.

Wiewohl er reich ist und (wiewohl er) viele Freunde hat, so ist er doch nicht glücklich.

Although he is rich and (although he) has many friends, still he is not happy.

subject in common with the sentence which they qualify, are sometimes reduced to a participial construction, if they have a verb of the present or imperfect tense for a predicate. Thus, instead of saying: Sie saß am Krankenbette ihrer Mutter, indem sie weinte, we may say: Weinend saß sie am Krankenbette ihrer Mutter, (Whilst she was) weeping she sat at the sick-bed of her mother.

\* Concluding the dependent sentences, we may observe that they could have been divided into substantive, adjective and adverbial sentences; since, in reality, they are nothing but circumlocutions for either substantives, adjectives, or adverbial phrases.

II. The conjunctions which join two or more similar sentences, are either simply conjunctive particles, such as *und*, and; *aber*, but; *oder*, or; *allein*, but; *denn*, for: or they constitute, at the same time, a part of the sentence, so that when they hold the first place in an absolute sentence, the verb, in order to rank second, follows immediately after them. Conjunctions of this latter kind are the following: *alsdann*, then; *also*, thus; *da*, then; *außerdem*, besides; *daher*, therefore; *damals*, at that time; *dann*, then; *darauf*, thereupon; *darum*, for that reason; *demnach*, consequently; *dennoch*, nevertheless; *desßhalb*, for that reason; *deswegen*, on that account; *desgleichen*, likewise; *doch*, yet, still (but this one does not always affect the situation of the verb); *endlich*, finally; *ferner*, moreover; *folglich*, consequently; *gleichwohl*, nevertheless; *hingegen*, on the contrary; *inzwischen*, in the mean while; *ingeleichen*, likewise; *insofern*, in this respect; *jedoch*, nevertheless; *jetzt*, now; *kaum*, scarcely; *mithin*, consequently; *nachher*, afterwards; *nichts desto weniger*, nevertheless; *noch*, yet, nor; *theils*, partly; *seitdem*, since; *so*, so, thus; *sonach*, accordingly; *überdies*, besides; *übrigens*, in other respects; *unterdessen*, in the mean time; *zuvor*, previously; *zuerst*, first; and some similar ones. Commonly, when the conjunctions *entweder*, either; *zwar*, indeed; *auch*, also, commence an absolute sentence, they are immediately followed by the verb; but for the sake of emphasis the verb may be preceded by the nominative or by some other word.\*

### Examples.

Der Schatten der Erde ist rund; folglich ist die Erde eine Kugel.	The shadow of the earth is round; consequently the earth is a globe.
Du streitest nicht durch deine eigne Kraft; drum muß es dir gelingen.	You contend not by your own strength; consequently you must succeed.
Gott ist die Liebe, also sind seine Befehle Befehle der Liebe.	God is love; hence his commands are the commands of love.
Jeder sei was er sein kann, dann ist er auch was er sein soll.	Let every one be what he can be, then he will be what he ought to be.

\* In old and formal language, the subject is sometimes preceded by the verb, when *und* precedes.

**REMARK.**—Such sentences as the preceding, are independent of each other in a grammatical point of view, although, in a logical sense, they may be dependent.

III. Two or more sentences of the same kind, may be abbreviated by using only once the part or parts, which they have in common; as,

1. Sentences which have the same subject :

Die Welle flieht und schwillt und bäugt sich schäumend nieder.	The wave flies on and staggers and swells and bows down foaming.
Laß mich dorthin gehen, daß ich die Stätte sehe, der Ernte Blumen darüber streue, un- ter die Blumen mich lege und sterbe.	Let me go there, that I may see the place, strew the harvest-flowers upon it, lay myself amidst the flowers and die.

2. Sentences which have the same subject and the same auxiliary verb :

Das Wasser hat überschwemmt und Erdlagen, Berge und Thäler gebildet.	The water has overflowed and formed strata, mountains and valleys.
--	--

(§ 140.) *Observations on the English Participles in reference to the German Language.*

Since in German there are no compound participles, and since simple participles are less frequent than in English, we often meet with participial constructions, which in German must be expressed by a circumlocution, and commonly by dependent sentences, as we shall see in the following rules.\*

I. When, in English, the present participle holds the same relation to the rest of the sentence as a cause to its effect, or as

---

\* The participles must be considered as abbreviations of dependent sentences; and hence, the former can always be resolved by the latter; and in German, when participles are used, they are commonly preceded by all their adjuncts, in the same manner as the verb of a dependent sentence.

time to an action, it is commonly translated into German by a dependent sentence; as,

Frederick of Austria, seeing the head of his friend fall, cried out. Als Friederich von Oestreich das Haupt seines Freundes fallen sah, rief er aus.

Relying upon his word, I was deceived. Indem ich mich auf sein Wort verließ, wurde ich betrogen.

In these examples, the present participle constitutes an essential condition, on which the rest of the sentence is founded, and which must have occurred before that which is subsequent to it.

II. When the present participle, with respect to the rest of the sentence, is rather an accidental, or merely a qualifying term, expressing some unessential circumstance, it may be rendered in German by the present participle; as,

And raising his hands and eyes to heaven, he said: "Lord! into thy hands I commend my soul." Und er sagte, Arme und Hände gen Himmel hebend: „Herr! in deine Hände befehle ich meinen Geist.“

III. The English past participle, compounded with *having*, since there is no German participle corresponding to it, is commonly translated by a dependent sentence, and the choice of the conjunction must depend on the idea to be conveyed; as,

Columbus, having returned to Spain, was at first received very honourably. Als Columbus nach Spanien zurückgekehrt war, wurde er anfangs sehr ehrenvoll empfangen.

IV. The simple as well as the compound participles of the English passive voice, may also be expressed by the German past participle; as,

Abandoned by his parents, he wanders about in the world. Von seinen Eltern verlassen, irrt er in Welt umher.

Being asked, or having been asked, why he wept, the boy replied. Befragt warum er weine, antwortete der Knabe.

**REMARK.** — Even in those cases in which participles may be used in German, dependent sentences are frequently preferred.

V. The nominative absolute is commonly expressed in German by a dependent sentence ; as,

This being the case, we cannot doubt any longer.      Da dieses der Fall ist, so können wir nicht länger zweifeln.

The sun having risen, we travelled on.      Als die Sonne aufgegangen war, setzten wir unsere Reise fort.

In German, the past participle is sometimes used absolutely in connection with an accusative ; as, Die Augen gen Himmel gerichtet, His eyes being directed towards heaven ; diesen Fall ausgenommen, this case being excepted.\*

VI. English participles used as verbal nouns, are sometimes translated into German by an infinitive ; but commonly they are expressed by a dependent sentence, particularly when they are preceded by a preposition ; as,

His desire of becoming rich is great.      Seine Begierde reich zu werden, ist groß.

Justice consists in giving to each one his own.      Die Gerechtigkeit besteht darin, daß sie jedem das Seinige giebt.

Pardon, Madam, my not telling you sooner than now, that we are safely arrived in Amsterdam.      Verzeihen Sie, Madam, daß ich Ihnen nicht früher als jetzt mittheile, daß wir wohl in Amsterdam angekommen sind.

VII. A participle or participial construction in English, may also frequently be expressed in German by nouns, particularly by those terminating in *ung*, and sometimes by an infinitive ; as,

---

\* Sometimes the past participle, standing absolutely in this manner, is substituted for the imperative ; as, Schnell die Kanonen geladen, Load quickly the cannons.

True philosophy consists in finding out what is true, in doing what is good, and in appreciating what is beautiful.

Die wahre Philosophie besteht in der Auffuchung der Wahrheit, in der Ausübung des Guten, und in der Werthschätzung des Schönen.

This being the case, we must believe it.

In diesem Falle müssen wir es glauben.

By teaching we learn.

Durch Lehren lernen wir.

Being asked, or having been asked, why he cried, the boy observed.

Auf die Frage, warum er weine, antwortete der Knabe.

VIII. Sometimes a participle in English, may be rendered in German by an absolute sentence; as,

Raising himself, he spoke.

Er erhob sich und sprach.

He smiled, seeming to applaud my resolution.

Er lächelte und schien meinen Entschluß zu billigen.

## APPENDIX.

16\*



# Characters in Print and in Handwriting.

## I. Simple Letters.

A	<i>A</i>	a	<i>a</i>	A
Ä	<i>Ä</i>	ä	<i>ä</i>	Ä
B	<i>B</i>	b	<i>b</i>	B
C	<i>C</i>	c	<i>c</i>	C
D	<i>D</i>	d	<i>d</i>	D
E	<i>E</i>	e	<i>e</i>	E
F	<i>F</i>	f	<i>f</i>	F
G	<i>G</i>	g	<i>g</i>	G
H	<i>H</i>	h	<i>h</i>	H
I	<i>I</i>	i	<i>i</i>	I
J	<i>J</i>	j	<i>j</i>	J
K	<i>K</i>	k	<i>k</i>	K
L	<i>L</i>	l	<i>l</i>	L

2000

100

10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25

“ ”

10

M *M*

N *N*

O *O*

Ö *Ö*

P *P*

Q *Q*

R *R*

S *S*

T *T*

U *U*

Ü *Ü*

V *V*

W *W*

X *X*

Y *Y*

Z *Z*

m *m*

n *n*

o *o*

ö *ö*

p *p*

q *q*

r *r*

s *s* (6)

t *t*

u *u*

ü *ü*

v *v*

w *w*

x *x*

y *y*

z *z*

M

N

O

Ö

P

Q

R

S

T

U

Ü

V

W

X

Y

Z



## II. Compound Letters.

---

### 1. Diphthongs.

---

au    äu    ai    eu    ei    oi    ui  
*au    äu    ai    eu    ei    oi    ui*  
 au    äu    ai    eu    ei    oi    ui

---

### 2. Compound Consonants

---

ch	<i>ch</i>	ch	ff	<i>ff</i>	ss
ck	<i>ck</i>	ck	ft	<i>ft</i>	st
ff	<i>ff</i>	ff	ß	<i>ß</i>	sz
pf	<i>pf</i>	pf	th	<i>th</i>	th
ph	<i>ph</i>	ph	tz	<i>tz</i>	tz
sch	<i>sch</i>	sch			

---

### Numbers.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0.

1840.



Der Claysen, Treuempfehlung, Töbhang, Larmhardt, Pfla.  
Klein, Masar, Freiburg, Mansheim, Larkin, Garg.  
Unter allen Völkern der Welt, nur die Grinsan  
willst du annehmen, die am Lauspfadstücken für  
den Reizen garman sind.

Warum können wollen, was sie nicht so? Ganz sagt,  
zu sagen? — Aberer Lichte Mairing kann sich zu nicht  
maßen, was sie nicht best. Day wirklich ein besser  
Mann — oder las mich den Distanz sagen.



Patronen, um beschmutzte Stellen

ganzer Kaiser Karl IV. 1788

Platz zu Luth zu legen, und in, nach ihm das

Wassers baibel, auf seinen Rock. Man fand einen Rock

nach das Dinsters. Der ganz mit Wasser beschriebenen und

beschrieben ist als ein großer Altarsait lange auf.

Ein gute Zeichnung ist ein großer Altarsait. man mag

von Laster. man man überweist im gute Grundsätze war.

nach. ein einen zärtlichen Vater haben.

Zur

un



Gewinnst der Vierte halbe Jahr, nach bei seiner  
Ankunft die Werkstätte aus, um müde in die Werkstatt zu  
bringen sein, wenn er Gefühls gestalt füllt, um die Herrn

zusammen zu bringen.

Der große Reichthum wird sein mühen, sein sein ist.  
Der Reichthum seiner selbst ist der Reichthum. Der Reichthum  
Mannung von sich sagt, zeigt einen reichlichen Reichthum.  
Es ist das Reichthum: man müße einen Reichthum  
Reichthum sein, ein Reichthum wäre ein Reichthum.



## PRACTICAL EXERCISES, WHICH ARE TO BE WRITTEN IN THE GERMAN HANDWRITING.

---

Before the student commences translating the following exercises, he should be familiar with the principal rules of Etymology and with the rules of Collocation stated under § 98, 127, 132, 133 and 134.

After the numbers in the following exercises, English phrases will be frequently given, with the corresponding translation; but commonly, for the sake of brevity, the German terms alone will be given *in their Absolute Form* i. e. *as we find them in the Dictionary*. Those words, with which the student is expected to be familiar, will not be noticed.

*Proper names* will only be given, when they are spelled in German differently from what they are in English.

## A. ABSOLUTE SENTENCES.

## I. EXERCISES ON THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

1. *Sentences with the Auxiliary Verb Haben.* (§ 54.)

Have you my book<sup>1</sup>? I had it yesterday<sup>2</sup>, but<sup>3</sup> I have not<sup>4</sup> had it to-day<sup>5</sup>. Perhaps<sup>6</sup> your brother<sup>7</sup> has it now<sup>8</sup>. Have you summer-hats<sup>9</sup> for<sup>10</sup> sale? We have none<sup>11</sup> at present<sup>12</sup>, but we will have some<sup>13</sup> in<sup>14</sup> a few days. Have you had much<sup>15</sup> pleasure<sup>16</sup> to-day? I have had but<sup>17</sup> little<sup>18</sup>; I would have had more<sup>19</sup> in your company<sup>20</sup>. I have had a great<sup>21</sup> misfortune<sup>22</sup> to-day. You have had many<sup>23</sup> misfortunes<sup>24</sup> this year<sup>25</sup>; but have patience<sup>26</sup> and<sup>27</sup> confidence<sup>28</sup> in<sup>29</sup> God<sup>30</sup>, all<sup>31</sup> sufferings<sup>32</sup> will have an end<sup>33</sup>.

1 Buch, *n.* 2 gestern. 3 aber. 4 nicht. 5 heute. 6 viel-leicht. 7 Bruder, *m.* 8 jetzt. 9 Sommerhut, *m.* 10 for sale, zu verkaufen. 11 feiner, *feine, feines.* — In German, the objective case commonly follows after the terms of time. (§ 131. IV. 2.) 12 at present, jetzt or gegenwärtig. 13 einiger, einige, einiges. (See the remark under 11.) 14 in a few days, in wenigen Tagen. 15 viel. 16 Vergnügen, *n.* 17 nur. 18 wenig. 19 mehr. 20 Gesellschaft, *f.* 21 groß. 22 Unglück, *n.* 23 viele. 24 Unglücksfall, *m.* 25 Jahr, *n.* 26 Geduld, *f.* 27 und 28 Vertrauen, *n.* 29 auf (*Acc.*). 30 Gott, *m.* 31 aller, alle, alles. 32 Leiden, *n.* 33 Ende, *n.*

2. *Sentences with the Auxiliary Verb Sein.* (§ 55.)

Is your father<sup>1</sup> at<sup>2</sup> home? He is in the country<sup>3</sup>, but he will be at home this evening<sup>4</sup>. Where<sup>5</sup> is your brother at present? He is in Berlin. Berlin is a very<sup>6</sup> handsome<sup>7</sup> city<sup>8</sup>. Have you ever<sup>9</sup> been there<sup>10</sup>? I have been in Germany<sup>11</sup>, but I have not been in Berlin. My father and I were in the theatre<sup>12</sup> yesterday evening. It was very crowded<sup>13</sup> and the pieces<sup>14</sup> were beautiful<sup>15</sup>. Why<sup>16</sup> were you not there? My mother<sup>17</sup> is very sick<sup>18</sup>. Are you well<sup>19</sup>? I am tolerably<sup>20</sup> well. There<sup>21</sup> are a great many persons sick at present. The weather<sup>22</sup> is too<sup>23</sup> changeable<sup>24</sup> in<sup>25</sup> this country. My friend<sup>26</sup>, you are not dili-

gent<sup>27</sup>. I would be more<sup>28</sup> diligent, but there are no<sup>29</sup> prospects<sup>30</sup> for<sup>31</sup> me. My children<sup>32</sup>, be virtuous<sup>33</sup> and industrious<sup>34</sup>, and you will be happy<sup>35</sup>.

1 Vater, *m.* 2 at home, zu Hause. 3 Land, *n.*—in the country, auf dem Lande. 4 Abend, *m.*—this evening, diesen Abend (§ 113).—In German, terms of time commonly precede those of place. 5 wo. 6 sehr. 7 schön. 8 Stadt, *f.* 9 schon. 10 da or dort. 11 Deutschland, *n.* 12 Theater, *n.* 13 voll. 14 Stück, *n.* 15 schön. 16 warum. 17 Mutter, *f.* 18 krank. 19 wohl. 20 ziemlich. 21 There are a great many persons sick at present, Es sind gegenwärtig sehr viele Leute krank. 22 Wetter, *n.* 23 zu. 24 veränderlich. 25 in (*Dat.*). 26 Freund, *m.* 27 fleißig. 28 more is to be expressed by the comparative of the following adjective. 29 fein, keine fein. 30 Aussicht, *f.* 31 für (*Acc.*). 32 Kind, *n.* 33 tugendhaft. 34 arbeitsam. 35 glücklich.

### 3. Sentences with the Auxiliary Verb Werden. (§ 56.)

No<sup>1</sup> one becomes learned<sup>2</sup> at<sup>3</sup> once. We become prudent<sup>4</sup> only<sup>5</sup> by<sup>6</sup> experience<sup>7</sup>. Many dreams<sup>8</sup> become true<sup>9</sup>. Darius became king<sup>10</sup> of the Persians<sup>11</sup> by the neighing<sup>12</sup> of a horse.<sup>13</sup> The Chinese<sup>14</sup> have become wiser<sup>15</sup> by the instructions<sup>16</sup> of Confucius. Did<sup>17</sup> your brother become rich<sup>18</sup> in America? He became very rich, but he has now become poor<sup>19</sup> again<sup>20</sup>. What<sup>21</sup> has become of<sup>22</sup> him? He will never<sup>23</sup> become a prudent man<sup>24</sup>. He would become more prudent under<sup>25</sup> your care<sup>26</sup>. Become wise and industrious, and you will become happy.

1 no one, niemand. 2 gelehrt. (See the note at the bottom of page 120.) 3 at once, auf einmal. 4 klug. 5 nur. 6 durch (*Acc.*). 7 Erfahrung, *f.* 8 Traum, *m.* 9 wahr. 10 König, *m.* 11 Perser, *m.* 12 Wiehren, *n.* 13 Pferd, *n.* 14 Chinese, *m.* 15 wise, weise. 16 Lehre, *f.* 17 The auxiliary verb *to do* is not expressed in German. (See the note at the bottom of page 68.) 18 reich. 19 arm. 20 wieder. 21 was. 22 aus (*Dat.*). 23 nie. 24 Mann, *m.* 25 unter (*Dat.*). 26 Aussicht, *f.*

## II. EXERCISES ON THE CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS. (§ 57. &c.)

### 1. Sentences with the Regular Verb *Lieben*, to love.

I love and I am loved. Dost thou love and art thou loved? He loves, but he is not loved. Does she love him and is she loved by<sup>1</sup> him? God loves all men<sup>2</sup>, but God is not beloved by all men. We love and we are loved. Do you love your fellow-men<sup>3</sup>, and are you loved by them? They love us, and they are loved by us. I loved them, but I was not beloved by them. The father loved his son<sup>4</sup>, but he was not beloved by him. They loved you, and were they not loved by you? I have always<sup>5</sup> loved my parents<sup>6</sup>, and I have always been loved by them. We have always loved our fatherland<sup>7</sup>, but we have not always been loved by our fellow-citizens<sup>8</sup>. Have you always loved your children, and have you always been beloved by them? They have not loved their scholars<sup>9</sup>, and they have not been loved by them. I will love my God, for<sup>10</sup> I am loved by him and I always shall be loved by him. I would love him, but I am not loved by him. I would have loved thee, but I was never loved by thee. Love yourself truly<sup>11</sup>, and you will be loved by others<sup>12</sup>.

1 von (*Dat.*). 2 Mensch, *m.* 3 Mitmenschen, *m.* 4 Sohn, *m.* 5 immer. 6 Eltern, without singular. 7 Vaterland, *n.* 8 Mitbürger, *m.* 9 Schüler, *m.* 10 denn. 11 aufrichtig. 12 andrer, *andre*, *andres*.

### 2. Sentences with Various Regular Verbs.

Death<sup>1</sup> spares<sup>2</sup> no one. Romulus killed<sup>3</sup> his brother Remus. Augustus dedicated<sup>4</sup> a temple<sup>5</sup> to Jupiter<sup>6</sup>. Alexander conquered<sup>7</sup> Darius. Troy<sup>8</sup> was destroyed<sup>9</sup> by the Greeks<sup>10</sup>. Who<sup>11</sup> has told<sup>12</sup> you this? I heard<sup>13</sup> it from<sup>14</sup> your brother. Cæsar was killed in Rome<sup>15</sup>. Skilful<sup>16</sup> men<sup>17</sup> are esteemed<sup>18</sup>, but ignorant<sup>19</sup> persons<sup>20</sup> are despised<sup>21</sup>. The kings of<sup>22</sup> France<sup>23</sup> have very often<sup>24</sup> been conquered by the kings of England<sup>25</sup>. Respect<sup>26</sup> yourself and you will be respected by others. Do you learn<sup>27</sup> the modern languages<sup>28</sup>? Yes Sir, I learn German<sup>29</sup>, French<sup>30</sup> and Spanish<sup>31</sup>.

1 Töb, *m.* (See § 114. Rule V. 3.) 2 schonen. 3 töbten. 4 weihen. 5 Zempel, *m.*—In German, the accusative commonly follows the dative. (See § 131. V. 1.) 6 to Jupiter, dem Jupiter. (See page 136. *f.*) 7 besiegen. 8 Troja, *n.* 9 zerstören. 10 Griechen, *m.* 11 wer. 12 sagen. 13 hören. 14 von. 15 Rom, *n.* 16 geschicht. 17 Leute, without singular. 18 schäßen. 19 unwissend. 20 Person, *f.* 21 verachten. 22 von. 23 Frankreich, *n.* 24 oft. 25 England, *n.* 26 achten. 27 lernen. 28 Sprache, *f.*—the modern languages, die neuern Sprachen. 29 Deutsch. 30 Französisch. 31 Spanisch.

### III. EXERCISES ON THE DIFFERENT CLASSES OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

#### 1. Sentences with Verbs of the First Class. (§ 66. &c.)

My son, why do you cry so? O father, the dog<sup>1</sup> has bitten me and torn<sup>2</sup> my clothes<sup>3</sup>. Why did<sup>4</sup> you not avoid him? He sneaked<sup>5</sup> up to me, and seized<sup>6</sup> me unexpectedly<sup>7</sup>. It seems he has bitten you badly<sup>8</sup>. Rub the wound<sup>9</sup> with<sup>10</sup> camphor<sup>11</sup>. Mother has rubbed it already<sup>12</sup>. Stay<sup>13</sup> at home to-day and write to<sup>14</sup> your uncle<sup>15</sup>; he will never<sup>16</sup> forgive<sup>17</sup> you, for he has written very often to<sup>18</sup> you and you have not written once<sup>19</sup> to him. Father, I wrote last<sup>20</sup> night. What did you write? This letter<sup>21</sup> has been written too<sup>22</sup> badly. You always write too fast<sup>23</sup>. I would have written better<sup>24</sup>, but my pen<sup>25</sup> was not<sup>26</sup> well made<sup>27</sup>. Next<sup>28</sup> time I shall write better.

1 Hund, *m.* 2 zerreißen. 3 Kleid, *n.* 4 Why did you not avoid him? Warum bist du ihm nicht ausgewichen? 5 He sneaked up to me, Er schlich sich auf mich zu. 6 angreifen.—The separable particle an, with which this verb is compounded, must hold the last place in the sentence as zu under the preceding number. 7 unerwartet. 8 schlimm. 9 Wunde, *f.* 10 mit (*Dat.*). 11 Kämpfer, *m.* 12 schon. 13 bleiben. 14 an (*Acc.*). 15 Oheim, *m.* 16 nie. 17 verzeihen. 18 to you, dir. 19 not once, noch nicht einmal, or noch gar nicht. 20 last night, gestern Abend. 21 Brief, *m.* 22 too badly, zu schlecht. 23 geschwind. 24 besser. 25 Feder, *f.* 26 not well, nicht gut. 27 schneiden. 28 next time, nächstens, or das nächste Mal.

2. *Sentences with Verbs of the Second Class.* (§ 70. &c.)

Who has found my book? I found it; here<sup>1</sup> it is. This book is beautifully bound. How<sup>2</sup> do you find yourselves? I find myself tolerably well. Why do you not drink? I have drunk more this<sup>3</sup> morning than<sup>4</sup> I generally<sup>5</sup> drink. Are you fond<sup>6</sup> of coffee? I would<sup>7</sup> rather drink tea and much<sup>8</sup> rather milk<sup>9</sup>. The Germans<sup>10</sup> have invented many things<sup>11</sup>. Peter Helle invented watches<sup>12</sup>. Berthold Schwartz invented gunpowder<sup>13</sup>, and the art<sup>14</sup> of printing was invented by John<sup>15</sup> Guttenberg. I have won<sup>16</sup> 6000 dollars<sup>17</sup> in the lottery<sup>18</sup>. You succeed<sup>19</sup> in every thing. I have never<sup>20</sup> yet won one dollar. O my friend, my brother was drowned<sup>21</sup> this morning. He and myself<sup>22</sup> were<sup>23</sup> swimming in the river<sup>24</sup>. He suddenly<sup>25</sup> sank, disappeared, and has not<sup>26</sup> yet been found. O how often have we been requested by our father not to swim in deep<sup>27</sup> places<sup>28</sup>.

1 hier. 2 How do you find yourselves? Wie befinden Sie sich? 3 this morning, diesen Morgen. (§ 113.) 4 als. 5 gewöhnlich. 6 Are you fond of coffee? Trinken Sie gerne Kaffee? 7 I would rather drink tea, Ich trinke lieber Thee. 8 much rather, am liebsten. 9 Milch, f. 10 the German, der Deutsche. 11 Sache, f. 12 Uhr, f. 13 Schießpulver, n. 14 art of printing, Buchdruckerkunst, f. 15 Johannes. 16 gewinnen. 17 Thaler, m. 18 Lotterie, f. 19 you succeed in every thing, Alles gelingt Ihnen. 20 never yet, noch nie. 21 ertrinken; Perf. ich bin ertrunken. 22 ich. 23 we were swimming, wir schwammen. 24 Fluß, m. 25 plötzlich. 26 not yet, noch nicht. 27 tief. 28 Stelle, f.

3. *Sentences with Verbs of the Third Class.* (§ 73. &c.)

It froze last<sup>1</sup> night. I have lost forty dollars and I have been cheated<sup>2</sup> out<sup>3</sup> of one hundred. How<sup>4</sup> much do you bid for this horse? Your brother has bidden twice<sup>5</sup> that much. Yesterday you enjoyed much pleasure, and I was<sup>6</sup> lying in my bed<sup>7</sup>. Boy<sup>8</sup>, do not tell a lie; it is forbidden by God to lie. The birds<sup>9</sup> have flown into warmer<sup>10</sup> regions<sup>11</sup>. The rivers<sup>12</sup> flow into the sea<sup>13</sup>. At<sup>14</sup> the battle<sup>15</sup> of<sup>16</sup> Leipsick<sup>17</sup> much blood<sup>18</sup> was shed<sup>19</sup>.

1 last night, die letzte Nacht. 2 betriegen or betrügen. 3 out of, um (Acc.). 4 how much, wie viel. 5 twice that much, zweimal so viel. 6 I was lying, ich lag. 7 Bett, n. 8 Knabe, m. 9 Vogel, m. 10 warm; comparative, wärmer. 11 Gegend, f. 12 Fluß, m. 13 See, f. 14 in. 15 Schlacht, f. 16 bei. 17 Leibzig, n. 18 Blut, n. 19 vergießen.

#### 4. Sentences with Verbs of the Fourth Class. (§ 76. &c.)

The snow<sup>1</sup> melts; the rivers swell. Speak little<sup>2</sup>, but speak well<sup>3</sup>. The pious<sup>4</sup> father raised<sup>5</sup> his eyes<sup>6</sup> to<sup>7</sup> heaven<sup>8</sup> and said<sup>9</sup>: God, into<sup>10</sup> thy hands<sup>11</sup> I recommend my spirit<sup>12</sup>; then<sup>13</sup> he took his last<sup>14</sup> farewell of<sup>15</sup> his children and died. Nearly<sup>16</sup> all<sup>17</sup> the Roman<sup>18</sup> senators<sup>19</sup> were bribed by Jugurtha. Alexander died at<sup>20</sup> Babylon. Cicero and Marius were born at Arpinum. God has given us a body<sup>21</sup> and soul<sup>22</sup>. Have you seen my brother? Yes Sir<sup>23</sup>, I saw him last<sup>24</sup> night. I spoke German with him. He speaks that language very well. He reads a great<sup>25</sup> deal. He has read nearly all the works<sup>26</sup> of<sup>27</sup> Schiller, Göthe, Bürger and Wieland. The German language is much spoken in this country. Did you give my letter to your father? I forgot it, but I will deliver<sup>28</sup> it to-day. Why do you not eat? I have eaten more than you. Are you fond<sup>29</sup> of wine-soup? I am more fond of milk-soup. My father is most fond of beer-soup. Please<sup>30</sup> remember me to your parents.

1 Schnee, m. 2 wenig. 3 gut. 4 fromm. 5 heben. 6 Auge, n. 7 zu (Dat.). 8 Himmel, m. 9 sprechen. 10 in (Acc.). 11 Hand, f. 12 Geist, m. 13 dann. 14 the last farewell, der letzte Abschied. 15 von (Dat.). 16 fast. 17 aller, alle, alles. 18 Römisch. 19 Senator, m. Pl. Senatoren. 20 zu. 21 Leib, m. 22 Seele, f. 23 mein Herr. 24 last night, gestern Abend. 25 a great deal, sehr viel. 26 Werk, n. 27 von. 28 abgeben. 29 Are you fond of wine-soup? Essen Sie gerne Weinsuppe? I am very fond of milk-soup, Ich esse lieber Milchsuppe; I am most fond of beer-soup, Ich esse am liebsten Biersuppe. 30 Please remember me to your parents, Empfehlen Sie mich gefälligst Ihren Eltern.

5. *Sentences with Verbs of the Fifth Class.* (§ 80. &c.)

The baker<sup>1</sup> bakes bread<sup>2</sup>. The miller<sup>3</sup> grinds grain<sup>4</sup>. How you grow! You<sup>5</sup> have grown at<sup>6</sup> least two inches<sup>7</sup> this year. Some<sup>8</sup> person was asking for<sup>9</sup> you. My father was buried yesterday. He always bore<sup>10</sup> his sufferings with resignation<sup>11</sup>. The Romans<sup>12</sup> were put<sup>13</sup> to flight. The clock<sup>14</sup> strikes. The clock has struck four. The fever<sup>15</sup> has left him. I have received a letter from Germany. Do you sleep yet? I did not sleep last night. I caught a fine<sup>16</sup> bird, but my brother let it fly. He delivered<sup>17</sup> a long<sup>18</sup> speech<sup>19</sup>, but it did not please me. How do you like<sup>20</sup> this weather? I like it very well. Why do you run so fast? My mother has called me. Men have been created for men. America has received<sup>21</sup> its name<sup>22</sup> from Americus Vesputius.

1 Bäcker, *m.* 2 Brod, *n.* 3 Müller, *m.* 4 Korn, *n.* 5 you have grown, du bist gewachsen. 6 at least, wenigstens. 7 two inches, zwei Zoll, and not zwei Zolle. (§ 117. Rule II.) 8 some person, jemand. 9 nach (*Dat.*). 10 ertragen. 11 Ergebung, *f.* 12 Römer, *m.* 13 to put to flight, in die Flucht schlagen. 14 Uhr, *f.* 15 Fieber, *n.* 16 schön. 17 halten. 18 lang. 19 Rede, *f.* 20 How do you like this weather? Wie gefällt Ihnen dieses Wetter? 21 erhalten. 22 Name, *m.*

6. *Sentences with Verbs of the Sixth Class.* (§ 83. &c.)

My father sent me yesterday a handsome<sup>1</sup> present<sup>2</sup>. Who brought this letter? I did not know the gentleman<sup>3</sup>. I was thinking of<sup>4</sup> you the whole<sup>5</sup> day. My brother's house<sup>6</sup> is burnt<sup>7</sup> down. How is this city called? Cicero is called the father of his country<sup>8</sup>. No one can escape<sup>9</sup> death. We must all<sup>10</sup> die, but we know<sup>11</sup> not when<sup>12</sup>. Who has done this? I did it. You ought<sup>13</sup> not to have done it. I did not know it. But you should<sup>14</sup> have known it. I will never do it again. When will you go to<sup>15</sup> Baltimore? I cannot go this week<sup>16</sup>, but I must go next<sup>17</sup> week. Can you not wait<sup>18</sup> one week longer<sup>19</sup>? I ought to have gone four days ago<sup>20</sup>. How long will you stay<sup>21</sup> in Baltimore? I shall be obliged<sup>22</sup> to remain there two months<sup>23</sup>. Will you go along<sup>24</sup>? I am not permitted. Why are you not permitted? My parents will not give me permission<sup>25</sup>. My

father came<sup>26</sup> home last night. Did your brother come along? He has not been able to come. Did you understand this man<sup>27</sup>? Romulus is said<sup>28</sup> to have been the first Roman king. Codrus is said to have been the last Athenian<sup>29</sup> king. We wish<sup>30</sup> to do it, but we cannot; you can do it, but you will not.

1 schön. 2 Geschenk, *n.* 3 Herr, *m.* 4 an (*Acc.*). 5 the whole day, den ganzen Tag. 6 Haus, *n.* 7 to burn down, abbrennen; *past participle*, abgebrannt. 8 Vaterland, *n.* 9 entgehen (*Dat.*). 10 we all, wir alle. 11 wissen. 12 wann. 13 you ought not have done it, Sie hätten es nicht thun müssen. (§ 65. 7.) 14 you should have known it, Sie hätten es wissen sollen. 15 nach. 16 Woche, *f.* 17 nächst. 18 warten. 19 lang, *comp.* länger. 20 four days ago, schon vor vier Tagen. 21 bleiben. 22 I will be obliged to remain there—, Ich werde dort — bleiben müssen. 23 Monat, *m.* 24 to go along, mitgehen. 25 not to give permission, keine Erlaubniß geben. 26 to come home, nach Hause kommen. 27 Mann, *m.* 28 Romulus is said to have been, Romulus soll gewesen sein. 29 Athenisch. 30 wollen.

#### IV. EXERCISE ON THE PROPER USE OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS **Haben** AND **Sein**. (§ 61.)

It has frozen<sup>1</sup> last night and all the apples<sup>2</sup> are frozen<sup>3</sup>. My father has started<sup>4</sup> for<sup>5</sup> Europe this morning. He has travelled<sup>6</sup> much this year. I have drunk much water<sup>7</sup> to-day. My brother is drowned. I have slept too long. He died<sup>8</sup> in the Lord. This man has awaked<sup>9</sup> from his long delusion<sup>10</sup>. My father is said to have arrived<sup>11</sup>. The vessel<sup>12</sup> has leaked<sup>13</sup>. The milk has become curdled<sup>14</sup>. I have melted<sup>15</sup> the lead<sup>16</sup>. The lead is melted. The clock has struck. The horse has kicked<sup>17</sup> him. His father is said to have died and to have suffered much in his sickness<sup>18</sup>. The bird has flown<sup>19</sup> away. The trees have grown<sup>20</sup> up very fast. It has rained<sup>21</sup> much this week. I have been sitting<sup>22</sup> the whole day. The sun has risen. This person has lain in his bed for three years.

1 frieren, *irr.* 2 Apfel, *m.* 3 verfrieren, *irr.* 4 abreisen, *p. p.* abgereist. 5 nach. 6 reisen. 7 Wasser, *n.* 8 to die in the Lord, im Herrn entschlafen, *irr.* 9 aufwachen *p. p.* aufge-

wacht. 10 Selbsttäuschung, *f.* 11 ankommen, *p. p.* angekommen. 12 Faß, *n.* 13 rinnen, *irr.* 14 to become curdled, gerinnen, *irr.* 15 schmelzen, *irr.* 16 Blei, *n.* 17 schlagen, *irr.* 18 Krankheit, *f.* 19 to fly away, wegfliegen, *p. p.* weggeflogen. 20 to grow up, aufwachsen, *p. p.* aufgewachsen. 21 regnen. 22 to be sitting, sitzen, *irr.*

## V. EXERCISES ON THE PARTICLES.

### 1. Exercise on the Inseparable Particles. (§ 63. I.)

Octavius conquered<sup>1</sup> Antony<sup>2</sup>. The Nile<sup>3</sup> irrigates<sup>4</sup> Egypt<sup>5</sup>. Alexander performed<sup>6</sup> many great deeds<sup>7</sup>. The Romans conquered<sup>8</sup> many countries<sup>9</sup>. The Romans and Grecians worshipped<sup>10</sup> many gods. Your letter has delighted<sup>11</sup> me. The earth<sup>12</sup> is illuminated<sup>13</sup> by the sun<sup>14</sup>. Cyrus waged<sup>15</sup> war against the Medes<sup>16</sup>. Alba Longa was destroyed<sup>17</sup> by Tullus Hostilius. The mountains<sup>18</sup> are covered<sup>19</sup> with ice<sup>20</sup> and snow<sup>21</sup>. The sun has dispersed<sup>22</sup> the fog<sup>23</sup>. Have you sold<sup>24</sup> your horse<sup>25</sup>? Has my law-suit<sup>26</sup> been decided<sup>27</sup>? Do not condemn<sup>28</sup> me unheard<sup>29</sup>. Why did you not obey<sup>30</sup> me? America was discovered<sup>31</sup> by Christopher<sup>32</sup> Columbus. Please remember me to your father.

1 besiegen. 2 Antonius. (See page 136. *f.*) 3 Nil, *m.* 4 bewässern. 5 Aegypten, *n.* 6 verrichten. 7 many great deeds, viele große Thaten. 8 erobern. 9 Land, *n.* 10 verehren. 11 ergözen. 12 Erde, *f.* 13 erleuchten. 14 Sonne, *f.* 15 to wage war against—, Krieg führen gegen—(*Acc.*). 16 Meder, *m.* 17 zerstören. 18 Berg, *m.* 19 bedecken. 20 Eis, *n.* 21 Schnee, *m.* 22 zerstreuen. 23 Nebel, *m.* 24 verkaufen. 25 Pferd, *n.* 26 law-suit, Prozeß, *m.* 27 entscheiden, *irr.* 28 verurtheilen. 29 ungehört. 30 gehorchen. 31 entdecken. 32 Christoph.

### 2. Exercise on the Separable Particles. (§ 63. II.)

Drops<sup>1</sup> of water excavate<sup>2</sup> the hardest<sup>3</sup> rocks<sup>4</sup>. Æneas settled<sup>5</sup> in Latium. Romulus and Remus grew<sup>6</sup> up among<sup>7</sup> shepherds<sup>8</sup>. These spangles<sup>9</sup> do not constitute<sup>10</sup> the queen<sup>11</sup>. Settle<sup>12</sup> your account<sup>13</sup> with heaven<sup>14</sup>. The Roman dictators<sup>15</sup> gave<sup>16</sup> up their office<sup>17</sup> after<sup>18</sup> one year. Cicero's life<sup>19</sup> was spent<sup>20</sup> in glorious<sup>21</sup> labours<sup>22</sup>. I prefer<sup>23</sup> friendship<sup>24</sup> to riches<sup>25</sup>. Do not deviate<sup>26</sup>.

Please enter<sup>27</sup>. When did you return<sup>28</sup> from Europe? The king did not assemble<sup>29</sup> the Parliament<sup>30</sup>. The sun sets<sup>31</sup>. The moon<sup>32</sup> rises<sup>33</sup>. Shut<sup>34</sup> the door<sup>35</sup>. Communicate<sup>36</sup> the news<sup>37</sup> to <sup>38</sup> me.

1 drops of water, Wassertropfen. 2 aushöhlen. 3 hard, fest or hart. 4 Felsen, *m.* 5 sich niederlassen, *irr.* 6 aufwachsen, *irr.* 7 unter (*Dat.*). 8 Hirt, *m.* 9 these spangles, diese Glitzer. 10 ausmachen. 11 Königin, *f.* 12 abschließen, *irr.* 13 Rechnung, *f.* 14 Himmel, *m.* 15 Dictator, *m. Pl.* Dictatoren. 16 to give up, niederlegen. 17 Amt, *n.* 18 nach (*Dat.*). 19 Leben, *n.* 20 hinbringen, *irr.* 21 rühmlich. 22 That, *f.* 23 vorziehen, *irr.* (*Dat.*) 24 Freundschaft, *f.* 25 Reichthum, *m.* 26 ausweichen, *irr.* 27 Please enter, Treten Sie gefälligst herein. 28 zurückkommen, *irr.* 29 zusammenrufen, *irr.* 30 Parlament, *n.* 31 untergehen, *irr.* 32 Mond, *m.* 33 aufgehen, *irr.* 34 zumachen. 35 Thür, *f.* 36 mittheilen. 37 Neuigkeit, *f.* 38 to me, mir.

### 3. Exercise on the Particles which are both Separable and Inseparable. (§ 63. III.)

Servius Tullius surrounded<sup>1</sup> the city<sup>2</sup> of Rome with a wall<sup>3</sup>. Aristotle<sup>4</sup> instructed<sup>5</sup> Alexander, king of Macedon<sup>6</sup>. Do not associate<sup>7</sup> with wicked<sup>8</sup> persons. Do not cut<sup>9</sup> down this tree<sup>10</sup>. The sun set most<sup>11</sup> beautifully. He has convinced<sup>12</sup> me. Alexander passed<sup>13</sup> over to Asia<sup>14</sup> Minor. Repeat<sup>15</sup> this sentence<sup>16</sup>. Take<sup>17</sup> back thy book.

1 umge'ben, *irr.* 2 the city of Rome, die Stadt Rom. 3 Mauer, *f.* 4 Aristoteles. 5 unterricht'en. 6 Macedonien, *n.* 7 um'gehen, *irr.* 8 wicked persons, böse Leute. 9 to cut down, um'hauen. 10 Baum, *m.* 11 most beautifully, sehr schön. 12 überzeugen. 13 to pass over, über'setzen. 14 Asia Minor, Klein-Asien, *n.* 15 wiederhol'en. 16 Satz, *m.* 17 to take back, zurücknehmen.

17\*

## VI. AN ADJECTIVE PREDICATE JOINED TO THE SUBJECT BY MEANS OF AN AUXILIARY VERB.

### 1. *An Adjective Predicate simply referring to the Subject.*

Lions<sup>1</sup> are bold<sup>2</sup> and strong<sup>3</sup>. Art<sup>4</sup> is long<sup>5</sup>, life is short<sup>6</sup>. Cyrus was braver<sup>7</sup> than Cræsus. Athens<sup>8</sup> and Sparta were more distinguished<sup>9</sup> than all the other Grecian<sup>10</sup> States<sup>11</sup>. The weather is warmer to-day than yesterday. Europe is smaller<sup>12</sup> than Asia<sup>13</sup>. The Roman empire<sup>14</sup> was very great<sup>15</sup>. Greece became very distinguished.

1 Löwe, *m.* 2 Kühn. 3 stark. (See the note at the bottom of page 120.) 4 Kunst, *f.* (See § 114. Rule V. 3.) 5 lang. 6 kurz. 7 brave, tapfer. 8 Athen, *n.* 9 berühmt. 10 Griechisch. 11 Staat, *m.* Plur. Staaten. 12 small, klein. 13 Asien, *n.* 14 Reich, *n.* 15 groß.

### 2. *An Adjective Predicate governing the Genitive. (§ 100.)*

Alexander was very often not master<sup>1</sup> of his anger<sup>2</sup>. You are not mindful<sup>3</sup> of your promise<sup>4</sup>. My friend is master of the German language. You are unworthy<sup>5</sup> of my friendship. I am certain<sup>6</sup> of it<sup>7</sup>. I am in need<sup>8</sup> of your advice<sup>9</sup>. Be mindful of your duty<sup>10</sup>. This villain<sup>11</sup> is deserving<sup>12</sup> of death. I am tired<sup>13</sup> of walking<sup>14</sup>. I am ignorant<sup>15</sup> of this region<sup>16</sup>.

1 not to be master, nicht mächtig sein. 2 Zorn, *m.* 3 eingedenk. 4 Versprechen, *n.* 5 unwürdig. 6 gewiß. 7 das, Gen. dessen. 8 to be in need of, bedürftig sein. 9 Rath, *m.* 10 Pflicht, *f.* 11 Bösewicht, *m.* 12 schuldig. 13 müde. 14 walking, das Gehen. 15 unfundig. 16 Gegen, *f.*

### 3. *An Adjective Predicate governing the Dative. (§ 101.)*

Death resembles<sup>1</sup> sleep<sup>2</sup>. Reason<sup>3</sup> is common<sup>4</sup> to all men. Children are very often unlike<sup>5</sup> their parents. The emperor<sup>6</sup> Commodus was very unlike his father Marcus Aurelius. I

am very much obliged<sup>7</sup> to you. Good children are obedient<sup>8</sup> to their parents.

1 to resemble, *ähnlich sein*. 2 *Schlaf, m.* (See § 114. Rule V. 3.) 3 *Bernunft, f.* (§ 114. Rule V. 3.) 4 *gemein*. 5 *unähnlich*. 6 *Kaiser, m.* 7 to be obliged, *verbunden sein*. 8 *gehorsam*.

#### 4. *An Adjective Predicate governing the Accusative.* (§ 102.)

My brother is eighty years old<sup>1</sup>. This man owes<sup>2</sup> me a hundred dollars. This well<sup>3</sup> is fifty<sup>4</sup> feet deep<sup>5</sup>. The city is two miles<sup>6</sup> off<sup>7</sup>. This board<sup>8</sup> is ten feet long, two feet broad<sup>9</sup>, and one inch<sup>10</sup> thick<sup>11</sup>. My uncle<sup>12</sup> is worth<sup>13</sup> 20,000 dollars.

1 *alt*. 2 to owe, *schuldig sein*. 3 *Brunnen, m.* 4 fifty feet, *fünfzig Fuß*, and not *Füße*. (§ 117. Rule II.) 5 *tief*. 6 *Meile, f.* 7 to be off, *entfernt sein*. 8 *Brett, n.* 9 *breit*. 10 *Zoll, m.* 11 *dicke*. 12 *Dheim, m.* 13 *reich*.

### VII. VERBS GOVERNING OBLIQUE CASES.

#### 1. *Exercise on the Genitive.* (§ 103.)

Miltiades was accused<sup>1</sup> of treason<sup>2</sup>. Verrès was convicted<sup>3</sup> by Cicero of theft<sup>4</sup>, plunder<sup>5</sup>, and murder<sup>6</sup>. The master<sup>7</sup> has charged<sup>8</sup> his servant<sup>9</sup> with theft. I have been robbed<sup>10</sup> of my money<sup>11</sup>. He has been discharged<sup>12</sup> from his office<sup>13</sup>. He has been banished<sup>14</sup> from his country. I have dispensed<sup>15</sup> him from his promises. He considers<sup>16</sup> me worthy of his friendship. He interests<sup>17</sup> himself for this child. I must make<sup>18</sup> use of your advice. The enemy<sup>19</sup> has taken<sup>20</sup> possession of the city. I could not refrain<sup>21</sup> from tears<sup>22</sup>. The just<sup>23</sup> man has also pity<sup>24</sup> on animals<sup>25</sup>. I apply<sup>26</sup> myself to the English language. The boy is ashamed<sup>27</sup> of his indolence<sup>28</sup>. I enjoy<sup>29</sup> good health<sup>30</sup>. I remember<sup>31</sup> this man very well. He does not care<sup>32</sup> about my admonitions<sup>33</sup>. Animals are in need<sup>34</sup> of food<sup>35</sup>. I am in need of your advice. I will not again make<sup>36</sup> mention of this affair<sup>37</sup>. I think<sup>38</sup> of the days of my youth<sup>39</sup>.

1 *anklagen*. 2 *Verrätherei, f.* (with the article.) 3 *überführen*. 4 *Diebstahl, m.* (use the article.) 5 *Raub, m.* 6

Mord, *m.* 7 Herr, *m.* 8 anklagen. 9 Knecht, *m.* 10 berauben. 11 Geld, *n.* 12 entsetzen. 13 Amt, *n.* 14 verweisen, *irr.* 15 entbinden, *irr.* 16 to consider worthy, würdigen. 17 to interest one's self, sich annehmen, *irr.* 18 to make use of, sich bedienen. 19 Feind, *m.* 20 to take possession of, sich bemätern. 21 to refrain, sich enthalten, *irr.* 22 Thräne, *f.* 23 the just man, der Gerechte. 24 to have pity on, sich erbar-men. 25 Thier, *n.* 26 to apply one's self, sich befeissen, *irr.* 27 to be ashamed, sich schämen. 28 Faulheit, *f.* 29 to enjoy, sich erfreuen. 30 Gesundheit, *f.* 31 to remember, sich erinnern. 32 achten. 33 Ermahnung, *f.* 34 to be in need of, bedürfen, *irr.* 35 Nahrung, *f.* 36 to make mention, erwähnen. 37 Sache, *f.* 38 gedenken. 39 Jugend, *f.*

## 2. Exercise on the Dative. (§ 104.)

I thank<sup>1</sup> you. He threatened<sup>2</sup> me. I beckoned<sup>3</sup> to my son. He delivered<sup>4</sup> me from<sup>5</sup> distress<sup>6</sup>. He obeys<sup>7</sup> his mother. He contradicted<sup>8</sup> me. He was obstinate<sup>9</sup> to his teacher<sup>10</sup>. He has avoided<sup>11</sup> me. She followed<sup>12</sup> her mother into<sup>13</sup> the garden<sup>14</sup>. The son resembles<sup>15</sup> his father. He listened<sup>16</sup> to me attentively<sup>17</sup>. This house pleases<sup>18</sup> many people. He flattered<sup>19</sup> his master. He has escaped<sup>20</sup> from death. He could not resist<sup>21</sup> the temptation<sup>22</sup>. He has assisted<sup>23</sup> me faithfully<sup>24</sup>. The coat<sup>25</sup> does not fit<sup>26</sup> me. This letter corresponds<sup>27</sup> to my expectations<sup>28</sup>. God has given reason to man.

1 danken. 2 drohen. 3 winken. 4 helfen, *irr.* 5 aus (*Dat.*). 6 Noth, *f.* 7 gehorchen. 8 widersprechen, *irr.* 9 to be obstinate to, trotzen. 10 Lehrer, *m.* 11 ausweichen, *irr.* 12 folgen. 13 in (*Acc.*). 14 Garten, *m.* 15 gleichen, *irr.* 16 zuhören. 17 aufmerksam. 18 gefallen, *irr.* 19 schmeicheln. 20 entgehen, *irr.* 21 widerstehen, *irr.* 22 Versuchung, *f.* 23 beistehen, *irr.* 24 redlich. 25 Rock, *m.* 26 passen. 27 entsprechen, *irr.* 28 Erwartung, *f.*

## 3. Exercise on the Accusative. (§ 105.)

Romulus built<sup>1</sup> Rome. The Nile makes<sup>2</sup> Egypt fertile<sup>3</sup>. All good men love equity<sup>4</sup>. The inhabitants<sup>5</sup> of Egypt worshipped Apis, a black<sup>6</sup> ox<sup>7</sup>. We do not see all the stars<sup>8</sup>. I hate<sup>9</sup> proud<sup>10</sup>,

wicked<sup>11</sup>, and ungrateful<sup>12</sup> men. Some animals sleep the whole<sup>13</sup> winter. Gorgias lived<sup>14</sup> one hundred and seven years. Why do you not visit<sup>15</sup> me? I shall visit you to-morrow. He calls<sup>16</sup> him a fool<sup>17</sup>. This house cost<sup>18</sup> 5000 dollars.

1 bauen. 2 machen. 3 fruchtbar. 4 Billigkeit, *f.* 5 Einwohner, *m.* 6 schwarz. 7 Dsch, *m.* 8 Stern, *m.* 9 hassen. 10 stolz. 11 böse. 12 undankbar. 13 the whole winter, den ganzen Winter. 14 leben. 15 besuchen. 16 nennen. 17 Narr, *m.* 18 kosten.

## VIII. EXERCISES ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

### 1. *Prepositions governing the Genitive.* (§ 107.)

The island of<sup>1</sup> Rhodes was formerly<sup>2</sup> distinguished for<sup>3</sup> its commerce<sup>4</sup> and navigation<sup>5</sup>. For God's sake, assist me. I shall return within a few days. The market-place<sup>6</sup> of Rome was situated<sup>7</sup> below the capitol<sup>8</sup>. Instead of horses the Laplanders<sup>9</sup> use<sup>10</sup> reindeer<sup>11</sup>. Africa is situated on the other side of the Mediterranean<sup>12</sup>. I have done this for your sake. Do it for my sake. I would<sup>13</sup> rather live out of the city than within it. According to his letter, he will be here to-morrow. By means of your assistance<sup>14</sup>, I shall succeed<sup>15</sup>. By virtue of our agreement<sup>16</sup>, I am allowed<sup>17</sup> to act<sup>18</sup> thus<sup>19</sup>. During the late war<sup>20</sup> all business<sup>21</sup> stopped<sup>22</sup>.

1 the island of Rhodes, die Insel Rhodus. 2 vormalß. 3 wegen. 4 Handel, *m.* 5 Schifffahrt, *f.* 6 Marktplatz, *m.* 7 to be situated, liegen, *irr.* 8 Capitolum, *n.* 9 Lappländer, *m.* 10 brauchen. 11 Rennthier, *n.* 12 the Mediterranean, das mittelländische Meer. 13 I would rather live, ich wohne lieber. 14 Beistand, *m.* 15 I shall succeed, es wird mir gelingen. 16 Vertrag, *m.* 17 to be allowed, dürfen or dörfen, *irr.* 18 handeln. 19 so. 20 Krieg, *m.* 21 all business, alle Geschäfte. 22 ruhen.

### 2. *Prepositions governing the Dative.* (§ 108.)

The most ancient<sup>1</sup> history<sup>2</sup> of the Grecians and Romans is embellished<sup>3</sup> with many fables<sup>4</sup>. The Athenians<sup>5</sup> made<sup>6</sup> peace<sup>7</sup>

with the Spartans<sup>8</sup>. I have received this book from my brother. I have done this to the best<sup>9</sup> of my power. This is contrary to the laws of nature. Since the death of my father, I have found no pleasure in society<sup>10</sup>. They are now coming from<sup>11</sup> church<sup>12</sup>. He was unfortunate<sup>13</sup> to<sup>14</sup> the last moment of his life. This book treats<sup>15</sup> of<sup>16</sup> the immortality<sup>17</sup> of the soul. After<sup>18</sup> our death, we leave<sup>19</sup> this earth<sup>20</sup>. I went<sup>21</sup> to meet my father. We sailed<sup>22</sup> against the wind<sup>23</sup>. He sat next to me. He was yesterday with<sup>24</sup> your father.

1 most ancient, ältest. 2 Geschichte, *f.* 3 ausgeschmückt. 4 Fabel, *f.* 5 Athenienser, *m.* 6 machen. 7 Friede, *f.* 8 Spartaner, *m.* 9 to the best of my power, nach meinen Kräften. 10 Gesellschaft, *f.* 11 aus. 12 Kirche, *f.* 13 unglücklich. 14 to the last moment, bis zum letzten Augenblicke. 15 handeln. 16 von. 17 Unsterblichkeit, *f.* 18 nach. 19 verlassen, *irr.* 20 Erde, *f.* 21 to go to meet, entgegen gehen; ich gehe — entgegen. 22 segeln. 23 Wind, *m.* 24 bei.

### 3. *Prepositions governing the Genitive and Dative.* (§ 109.)

I love him in spite of his faults<sup>1</sup>. He will be here within a few days. I have purchased<sup>2</sup> the books according to your order<sup>3</sup>. We walked<sup>4</sup> along the river.

1 Fehler, *m.* 2 kaufen. 3 Auftrag, *m.* 4 to walk, spazieren gehen; I walk, ich gehe spazieren.

### 4. *Prepositions governing the Accusative.* (§ 110.)

Pyrrhus fought<sup>1</sup> against<sup>2</sup> the Romans. Leonidas died a glorious<sup>3</sup> death for<sup>4</sup> his country. Alexander is said to have been very cruel<sup>5</sup> and unjust<sup>6</sup> towards the end<sup>7</sup> of his life. I am much concerned<sup>8</sup> for<sup>9</sup> you. A good conscience<sup>10</sup> is the greatest reward<sup>11</sup> of<sup>12</sup> virtue<sup>13</sup>. Without the grace<sup>14</sup> of God we cannot<sup>15</sup> do any thing. He is opposed<sup>16</sup> to me.

1 kämpfen. 2 gegen. 3 rühmlich. 4 für. 5 grausam. 6 ungerecht. 7 Ende, *n.* 8 bekümmert. 9 um. 10 Gewissen, *n.* 11 Lohn, *m.* 12 für. 13 Tugend, *f.* 14 Gnade, *f.* 15 not any thing, nichts. 16 wider.

5. *Prepositions governing the Dative and Accusative.* (§ 111.)

The fish<sup>1</sup> swim in the water. The dog jumped<sup>2</sup> into the water. Amongst the Grecians there<sup>3</sup> were many great men<sup>4</sup>. Epaminondas ranks<sup>5</sup> amongst the greatest men. The fortification<sup>6</sup> is situated<sup>7</sup> upon<sup>8</sup> the mountain. He laid<sup>9</sup> down upon the bed. He sat<sup>10</sup> beside<sup>11</sup> me. Sit<sup>12</sup> down beside me. Amongst the Philosophers<sup>13</sup> is a dispute<sup>14</sup>. He leaped<sup>15</sup> into the midst<sup>16</sup> of the enemy. The adjective<sup>17</sup> always stands<sup>18</sup> before its substantive<sup>19</sup>, only<sup>20</sup> poets<sup>21</sup> put<sup>22</sup> it after<sup>23</sup> it. The slate<sup>24</sup> hangs<sup>25</sup> on the wall. Hang the slate on the wall<sup>26</sup>. He died of<sup>27</sup> the consumption<sup>28</sup>. He wrote to<sup>29</sup> his brother. The image<sup>30</sup> hangs over the door. The wind rushes<sup>31</sup> over the sea<sup>32</sup>. He weeps<sup>33</sup> over his misfortune. This law-suit<sup>34</sup> has lasted<sup>35</sup> more<sup>36</sup> than six years. Rome attained<sup>37</sup>, under the government<sup>38</sup> of Augustus, her highest<sup>39</sup> splendour. The Rhine<sup>40</sup> ranks amongst the principal<sup>41</sup> streams of Germany. God rules<sup>42</sup> over us.

1 Fisch, *m.* 2 springen, *irr.* 3 there were, *es gab.* 4 Mann, *m.* 5 gehören. 6 Festung, *f.* 7 liegen, *irr.* 8 auf. 9 to lay down, *sich legen.* 10 sitzen, *irr.* 11 neben. 12 to sit down, *sich setzen.* 13 Philosoph, *m.* 14 Streit, *m.* 15 springen, *irr.* 16 into the midst of the enemy, *zwischen die Feinde.* 17 Adjectiv, *n.* 18 stehen, *irr.* 19 Substantiv, *n.* 20 nur. 21 Dichter, *m.* 22 stellen. 23 hinter. 24 Tafel, *f.* 25 hängen. 26 Wand, *f.* 27 an. 28 Auszehrung. 29 an. 30 Bild, *n.* 31 fahren. 32 Meer, *n.* 33 weinen. 34 Prozeß, *m.* 35 dauern. 36 more than, *über.* 37 erreichen. 38 Regierung, *f.* 39 the highest splendour, *die höchste Blüthe.* 40 Rhein, *m.* 41 the principal stream, *der Hauptstrom.* 42 walten.

## IX. EXERCISES ON THE DIFFERENT NUMBERS. (§ 45.&amp;c.)

## 1.

Rome had seven kings. Romulus, the first king, ruled<sup>1</sup> 37 years, viz,<sup>2</sup> from 754 to<sup>3</sup> 717; Numa Pompilius, the second king, governed 43 years, from 715 to 672; Tullus Hostilius, the third king, ruled 32 years, from 672 to 640; Ancus Martius, the fourth king, reigned 24 years, from 640 to 616; Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth king, ruled 38 years, from 616 to 578; Servius Tullius, the sixth king, governed 44 years, from 578 to

534 ; and Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh king, ruled 25 years, from 534 to 509. All<sup>4</sup> together, therefore, ruled 243 years. Mary<sup>5</sup> Stuart, queen of Scotland, died at 8 o'clock on the morning of the 7th of January 1587, in the forty-fifth year of her age<sup>6</sup> and in the nineteenth of her captivity<sup>7</sup>. Louis<sup>8</sup> XVI. died under the guillotine<sup>9</sup> between ten and eleven o'clock, on the morning of the 21st of January 1793.

1 regieren. 2 nämlich. 3 bis. 4 All together therefore ruled, Alle zusammen genommen haben also — regiert. 5 Maria Stuart, Königin von Schottland. Let the order of the numbers be in German as follows: 1587 the 7th of January (den siebenten Januar), in the morning at 8 o'clock (des Morgens um acht Uhr), in the forty-fifth year &c. The same order is to be observed in the next sentence. 6 Alter, n. 7 Gefangenschaft, f. 8 Ludwig. 9 Guillotine, f.

## 2.

How much did you give for your summer-hat? I paid<sup>1</sup> one dollar and a half. That is very cheap<sup>2</sup>. I paid twice that much for my hat, and my brother paid six dollars and a half for his. What<sup>3</sup> o'clock is it? It is one o'clock. It is only half past twelve by<sup>4</sup> my watch. Your watch goes too fast; it cannot be more than a quarter past twelve. By the city-clock<sup>5</sup> it is twenty minutes<sup>6</sup> to<sup>7</sup> one. Why did you not buy<sup>8</sup> this house? In the first place, it is too small<sup>9</sup>; secondly, it is too old; and thirdly, it is too dear<sup>10</sup>. Is this the first time you have been in the city? No Sir, it is the second time. How much is three times three? Three times three is nine. How much is four times four? Four times four is sixteen. How much is six times six? Six times six is thirty six, How much is ten times ten? Ten times ten is a hundred.

1 zahlen. 2 billig or wohlfeil. 3 What o'clock is it? Wie viel Uhr ist es? 4 by my watch, nach meiner Uhr. 5 city-clock, Stadtuhr, f. 6 Minute, f. 7 to one, vor ein. 8 kaufen. 9 schmal. 10 theuer.

## B. DEPENDENT SENTENCES IN CONNEXION WITH ABSOLUTE SENTENCES.

## 1.

Since<sup>1</sup> the great are seldom contradicted, they<sup>2</sup> are apt to imagine, that<sup>3</sup> they know every thing better than others. Since you have worked<sup>4</sup> diligently<sup>5</sup>, you<sup>6</sup> may now take a walk. Since it rains<sup>7</sup>, we must<sup>8</sup> remain at home. I cannot go<sup>9</sup> out, because<sup>10</sup> I am sick. Since the ground<sup>11</sup> has rested<sup>12</sup>, it produces<sup>13</sup> rich<sup>14</sup> fruits<sup>15</sup>.

1 Da den Großen selten widersprochen wird. 2 so bilden sie sich leicht ein. 3 daß sie alles besser wissen. 4 arbeiten. 5 fleißig. 6 so könnt ihr jetzt spazieren gehen. 7 regnen. 8 müssen, *irr.* 9 to go out, ausgehen, *irr.* 10 weil. 11 Aber, *m.* 12 ruhen. 13 tragen, *irr.* 14 reichlich. 15 Frucht, *f.*

## 2.

We feel<sup>1</sup> that virtue<sup>2</sup> renders<sup>3</sup> us happy. It is said<sup>4</sup> that men formerly<sup>5</sup> were taller<sup>6</sup> and stronger<sup>7</sup> than<sup>8</sup> they are now. My friend told me, that he would do this. Aristides was so just<sup>9</sup> and honest<sup>10</sup>, that he could not be reproached<sup>11</sup>. It was so warm yesterday, that we could not go out. The Romans put<sup>12</sup> up their laws publicly<sup>13</sup>, in order<sup>14</sup> that they might not be unknown<sup>15</sup> to any one<sup>16</sup>.

1 fühlen. 2 Tugend, *f.* 3 machen. 4 it is said, man sagt. 5 einst. 6 tall, groß. 7 strong, stark. 8 than they are now, als sie jetzt sind. 9 gerecht. 10 redlich. 11 tadeln. 12 to put up, aufstellen. 13 öffentlich. 14 in order that they might be, damit sie — wären. 15 unbekannt. 16 not to any one, niemanden.

## 3.

Whilst<sup>1</sup> Augustus ruled, the arts<sup>2</sup> and sciences<sup>3</sup> flourished<sup>4</sup> at Rome. After<sup>5</sup> Alexander had died, many wars arose<sup>6</sup>, since his generals<sup>7</sup> aimed<sup>8</sup> at<sup>9</sup> the government<sup>10</sup>. As<sup>11</sup> long as the laws of Lycurgus prevailed<sup>12</sup>, the people<sup>13</sup> of Lacedæmon were brave<sup>14</sup>. After Codrus had died for his country, the Athenians did not choose<sup>15</sup> another king, because they thought<sup>16</sup> that<sup>17</sup> they

would never receive so good a king as <sup>18</sup> Codrus had been. When Solon, the Athenian<sup>19</sup> law-giver<sup>20</sup>, was with Cræsus, he told him, that no one could be called happy before death. When Cræsus afterwards<sup>21</sup> was standing<sup>22</sup> on the funeral pile<sup>23</sup>, he cried <sup>24</sup> out: O Solon! Solon! for <sup>25</sup> he remembered what Solon had said.

1 während. 2 Kunst, *f.* 3 Wissenschaft, *f.* 4 blühen. 5 als. 6 entstehen, *irr.* 7 General, *m.* 8 streben. 9 nach (*Dat.*). 10 Regierung, *f.* 11 as long as, so lange. 12 gelten, *irr.* 13 the people of Lacedæmon, das Volk der Lacedæmonier. 14 tapfer. 15 wählen. 16 glauben. 17 daß sie nie wieder einen so guten König empfangen würden. (See § 124. 3.) 18 als Codrus gewesen wäre. 19 Athenisch. 20 Gesetzgeber, *m.* 21 darnach. 22 to stand, stehen, *irr.* 23 Scheiterhaufen, *m.* 24 to cry out, ausrufen, *irr.* 25 for he remembered what—, denn er erinnerte sich an das was—.

## 4.

Since man does not know what <sup>1</sup> his soul is, how can he know what <sup>2</sup> God is? Examine<sup>3</sup> yourselves daily, whether<sup>4</sup> you have carefully<sup>5</sup> discharged<sup>6</sup> your duties<sup>7</sup>. You have not told me yet, why you did not come to school<sup>8</sup> yesterday. A bad scholar is indifferent<sup>9</sup> whether he be praised or reproached. Do you know whether your father is at home? In general<sup>10</sup>, the <sup>11</sup> more violent our pains are, the <sup>12</sup> shorter they are. The longer life lasts<sup>13</sup>, the more troubles<sup>14</sup> it has. The better man is, the more he is delighted<sup>15</sup> by the beauties<sup>16</sup> of nature. The greater distress<sup>17</sup> is, the more it meets<sup>18</sup> with sympathy<sup>19</sup>. Let us live, as<sup>20</sup> it becomes<sup>21</sup> christians<sup>22</sup>.

1 what his soul is, wie seine Seele beschaffen ist. 2 was Gott ist. 3 prüfen. 4 ob. 5 genau. 6 erfüllen. 7 Pflicht, *f.* 8 Schule, *f.* 9 a bad scholar is indifferent, einem schlechten Schüler ist wenig daran gelegen. 10 in general, gewöhnlich. 11 the more violent our pains are, je heftiger unsere Schmerzen sind. 12 the shorter they are, desto kürzer sind sie. 13 dauern. 14 Beschwerde, *f.* 15 erfreuen. 16 Schönheit, *f.* 17 Noth, *f.* 18 finden, *irr.* 19 Mitleiden, *n.* 20 wie. 21 geziemen. 22 Christ, *m.*

## 5.

If<sup>1</sup> you are industrious, you will learn<sup>2</sup> much. God will not abandon<sup>3</sup> you, provided<sup>4</sup> you do not forsake him. I will assist you, in case<sup>5</sup> you deserve<sup>6</sup> my aid<sup>7</sup>. If you do not love your brother, whom you see, how can you love God, whom you do not see? No<sup>8</sup> inclination<sup>9</sup> is good in itself<sup>10</sup>, but<sup>11</sup> only inasmuch<sup>12</sup> as it tends to good. Although<sup>13</sup> he is not rich, still<sup>14</sup> he does a great deal of good. Although he is old, still he is active<sup>15</sup>. He is diligent except<sup>16</sup> that sometimes he neglects going to school.

1 wenn. 2 lernen. 3 verlassen, *irr.* 4 wofern. 5 in case, falls or im Falle. 6 verdienen. 7 Hülfe, *f.* 8 kein, keine, fein. 9 Neigung, *f.* 10 in itself, an sich. 11 sondern. 12 inasmuch as it tends to good, insofern sie auf etwas Gutes hinstrebt. 13 obgleich. 14 still he does a great deal of good, so that er doch viel Gutes. 15 thätig. 16 ausgenommen daß (or nur daß) er zuweilen die Schule versäumt.

## 6.

The sun<sup>1</sup> which gives you light and heat; the moon<sup>2</sup> which, by her light, directs your steps at night; the evening<sup>3</sup> which regularly succeeds the morning, and the morning which regularly succeeds the evening; the countless<sup>4</sup> number<sup>5</sup> of stars<sup>6</sup>, which raise<sup>7</sup> your mind<sup>8</sup>, carry<sup>9</sup> it away, and elevate<sup>10</sup> it to the divinity<sup>11</sup>; what<sup>12</sup> does all this tell you but that God is love, and that his love is inexhaustible, extending as far as the heavens, including all the universe? A rich<sup>13</sup> person who is not beneficent<sup>14</sup> and liberal<sup>15</sup>; a poor<sup>16</sup> person, who flies<sup>17</sup> labour<sup>18</sup>; a wise<sup>19</sup> man, who holds<sup>20</sup> a high<sup>21</sup> station, and does not protect<sup>22</sup> arts and talents<sup>23</sup>, are useless<sup>24</sup> and dangerous<sup>25</sup> members<sup>26</sup> of society. He does not know where<sup>27</sup> to commence. I do not see whence<sup>28</sup> it comes.

1 Die Sonne, die dich beleuchtet und erwärmt. 2 der Mond, der dich des Nachts mit seinem Scheine leitet. 3 der Abend, welcher stets auf den Morgen folgt. Since the verb folgt occurs again in the next co-ordinate sentence, it may be omitted in this. (§ 139. III.) 4 zahllos. 5 Meer, *n.* 6 Stern, *m.* 7 emporheben, *irr.* 8 Geist, *m.* 9 to carry away, fortreißen, *irr.* 10 erheben, *irr.* The pronoun after elevate is not to be ex-

pressed in German, and it may also be omitted, after the preceding verb. 11 Gottheit, *f.* 12 what does all this tell you but, *was sagt dir dieses alles anders als.* In German, the next two dependent sentences as well as the following two participles will read better in the form of absolute sentences; as, Gott ist die Liebe, und seine Liebe ist unerschöpflich, sie gehet soweit die Himmel reichen, und umfaßt alle Welten. 13 a rich person, ein Reicher. 14 wohlthätig. 15 freigebig. 16 a poor person, ein Armer. 17 fliehen. 18 Arbeit. 19 a wise man, ein Weiser. 20 bekleiden. 21 a high station, eine hohe Stelle. 22 schützen. 23 Talent, *n.* 24 unnütz. 25 gefährlich. 26 Mitglied, *n.* 27 where to commence, wo er anfangen soll. 28 woher.

### C. MIXED SENTENCES AND PHRASES.

#### 1.

Nothing<sup>1</sup> is more lovely<sup>2</sup> than virtue. Language is the mirror<sup>3</sup> and image<sup>4</sup> of our soul. Industry<sup>5</sup> is the mother of fortune<sup>6</sup>. A good, constant<sup>7</sup> friend is a great treasure<sup>8</sup>. It is difficult<sup>9</sup> to be young<sup>10</sup> and wise. No victory<sup>11</sup> is more glorious<sup>12</sup> than that which we gain<sup>13</sup> over our passions. Speak little, but speak well, if<sup>14</sup> you wish to be considered a prudent man. The knowledge<sup>15</sup> of ourselves<sup>16</sup> is the foundation<sup>17</sup> of every virtue. The wicked carries<sup>18</sup> his punishment<sup>19</sup> with<sup>20</sup> him.

1 nichts. 2 liebenswürdig. 3 Spiegel, *m.* 4 Bild, *n.* 5 Fleiß, *m.* 6 Glück, *n.* 7 beständig. 8 Schatz, *n.* 9 schwer. 10 jung. 11 Sieg, *m.* 12 rühmlich. 13 erlangen. 14 wenn du für einen verständigen Mann willst gehalten werden. (§ 137. 4.) 15 Kenntniß, *f.* 16 of ourselves, unser selbst. 17 Grundlage, *f.* 18 tragen, *irr.* 19 Strafe, *f.* 20 with him, mit sich.

#### 2.

Ability<sup>1</sup> and piety<sup>2</sup>, not riches, bestow<sup>3</sup> true honour upon man. Every part<sup>4</sup> of our life, which we have not spent<sup>5</sup> for<sup>6</sup> our perfection<sup>7</sup>, is lost. If we could look into futurity<sup>8</sup>, we would be deprived of hope<sup>9</sup>, the greatest consolation<sup>10</sup> in sufferings<sup>11</sup>. On-

ly<sup>12</sup> the virtuous man can face<sup>13</sup> death with joy, for<sup>14</sup> it conducts<sup>15</sup> him into a better life. To sacrifice<sup>16</sup> one's conscience is the same as burning<sup>17</sup> a beautiful picture<sup>18</sup>, in order<sup>19</sup> to have its ashes<sup>20</sup>. Misfortunes are to the soul, what thunder<sup>21</sup> and lightning are to the air<sup>22</sup>.

1 Geschicklichkeit, *f.* 2 Frömmigkeit, *f.* 3 bestow true honour upon man, geben dem Menschen wahre Ehre. 4 Theil, *m.* 5 verwenden, *irr.* 6 zu. 7 Verebelung, *f.* 8 Zukunft, *f.* 9 Hoffnung, *f.* 10 Trösterin, *f.* 11 in sufferings, im Leiden. 12 only the virtuous man, nur der Tugendhafte. 13 to face death with joy, dem Tode mit Freuden entgegen sehen. 14 denn. 15 führen. 16 to sacrifice one's conscience, sein Gewissen opfern. 17 burning, verbrennen. 18 Gemälde, *n.* 19 in order to have, um—zu haben. 20 Asche, *f.* 21 thunder and lightning, Gewitter, *n.* 22 Luft, *f.*

## 3.

Let<sup>1</sup> us possess virtue, knowledge<sup>2</sup>, mildness<sup>3</sup>, and we will be truly amiable. Liberality<sup>4</sup> does not consist so much in giving a great deal, as in giving at a proper time. A philosopher<sup>5</sup> being asked: "what is friendship?" replied<sup>6</sup>: "it is one soul, that animates<sup>7</sup> two bodies<sup>8</sup>. One<sup>9</sup> commonly<sup>10</sup> resembles<sup>11</sup> those, with whom he associates<sup>12</sup>. This ought<sup>13</sup> to induce us to have intercourse<sup>14</sup> only with the wise and virtuous. Do not defer<sup>15</sup> till<sup>16</sup> to-morrow, what<sup>17</sup> you ought to do to-day. He<sup>18</sup> who is content<sup>19</sup>, is rich; the discontented<sup>20</sup> are always poor.

1 Let us possess, laßt uns — besitzen. 2 Wissenschaft, *f.* 3 Sanftmuth, *f.* 4 Liberality does not consist so much in giving a great deal as in &c., Die Freigebigkeit besteht nicht sowohl darin, daß man viel giebt, als darin, daß man &c. 5 A philosopher being asked, Ein Philosoph, welcher gefragt wurde. 6 antworten. 7 beleben. 8 Körper, *m.* 9 man. 10 gewöhnlich. 11 gleichen. 12 umgehen. 13 this ought to induce us, dieses sollte uns antreiben. 14 Umgang, *m.* 15 verschieben, *irr.* 16 till to-morrow, auf morgen. 17 what you ought to do to-day, was du heute thun solltest. 18 he who, wer. 19 zufrieden. 20 der Unzufriedene.

18\*

## D. MISCELLANEOUS SUBJECTS.

## 1.

I have read your letter with very great pleasure. I do not know how<sup>1</sup> you have been able to learn the German language in so short a time. Since you request<sup>2</sup> me to correct<sup>3</sup> the faults which<sup>4</sup> I may find, I<sup>5</sup> tell you freely, that you have made two very great faults. The first is that your letter is too short, and the second, that you request me to correct it. Please<sup>6</sup> avoid these two faults in future<sup>7</sup>, and you will greatly<sup>8</sup> oblige<sup>9</sup> your friend.

1 Wie Sie in so kurzer Zeit die Deutsche Sprache haben lernen können. (§ 137. 4.) 2 bitten. 3 verbessern. 4 welche ich finden würde. 5 so sage ich Ihnen frei heraus. 6 Please avoid, vermeiden Sie gefälligst. 7 in future, in Zukunft. 8 sehr. 9 verpflichten.

## 2.

They<sup>1</sup> once gave a paper<sup>2</sup>, on<sup>3</sup> which was written the prescription<sup>4</sup> of a physician<sup>5</sup>, to a sick peasant<sup>6</sup>, and said to him: "Take<sup>7</sup> this to-morrow<sup>8</sup> morning." The peasant, believing<sup>9</sup> that the paper was the remedy<sup>10</sup>, ate it and became well<sup>11</sup>.

1 They once gave, Man gab einst. 2 Papier, *n.* 3 on which, worauf. 4 Receipt, *n.* 5 Arzt, *m.* 6 Bauer, *m.* 7 einnehmen, *irr.* 8 to-morrow morning, morgen früh. 9 In German, this participle is to be expressed by a finite tense. (See § 140. I. and VIII.) 10 Mittel, *n.* 11 gesund.

## 3.

A good parson preaching<sup>1</sup> one Sunday afternoon, and observing that a gentleman<sup>2</sup> not far<sup>3</sup> from the pulpit<sup>4</sup> had fallen asleep<sup>5</sup>, and that two ladies<sup>6</sup> were talking<sup>7</sup> so loud<sup>8</sup> as to be heard, said: "Ladies do not talk so loud, lest<sup>9</sup> you awake this gentleman."

1 Als ein guter Pfarrer eines Sonntags Nachmittags predigte und bemerkte. (See § 140. I.) 2 Herr, *m.* 3 not far from, nicht weit von. 4 Kanzel, *f.* 5 to fall asleep, einschlafen, *irr.* 6 Dame, *f.* 7 sprechen, *irr.* 8 so loud as to be heard, so laut, daß sie gehört wurden. 9 lest you awake, daß Sie — nicht wecken.

## 4.

A young man, wishing to write a letter to his sweetheart<sup>1</sup>, and not knowing how<sup>2</sup> to proceed, bought<sup>3</sup> a letter book.<sup>4</sup> Having<sup>5</sup> found such a letter as he wished<sup>6</sup> for, he copied<sup>7</sup> it and sent<sup>8</sup> it off. But as the lady had the same book and found in it this letter with its answer<sup>9</sup>, she wrote to her lover<sup>10</sup> only these words: "Sir, I have received your letter; turn<sup>11</sup> the leaf<sup>12</sup> and you will find the answer."

1 Geliebte, *f.* 2 how to proceed, *wie er es anfangen sollte.* 3 kaufen. 4 Briefbuch, *n.* 5 (See § 140. III.) 6 to wish for, wünschen. 7 abschreiben, *irr.* 8 to send off, absenden, *irr.* 9 Antwort, *f.* 10 Liebhaber, *m.* 11 wenden, *irr.* 12 Blatt, *n.*

## 5.

A good old man, who was very sick, sent<sup>1</sup> for his wife and said to her: "My dear<sup>2</sup>, I must now leave you, for my last hour, as you see, has arrived: If<sup>3</sup> you wish to see me die quietly, you must do me a favour<sup>4</sup>. You are yet quite young, and no<sup>5</sup> doubt you will marry<sup>6</sup> again. Knowing<sup>7</sup> this, I would request you not to marry<sup>8</sup> Mr. —, for I assure<sup>9</sup> you, that I was always jealous<sup>10</sup> of<sup>11</sup> him and that I am so yet." The woman replied: "My dear<sup>12</sup>, let<sup>13</sup> not this prevent you from dying quietly, for I assure you, that<sup>14</sup> even if I should wish to marry him, it could not be done, since I am already engaged to another one."

1 ließ seine Frau zu sich kommen. 2 my dear, meine Liebe. 3 wenn du mich willst ruhig sterben sehen. (§ 137. 4.) 4 Gefallen, *m.* 5 no doubt, ohne Zweifel. 6 to marry, sich verheirathen. 7 Da ich das weiß, so wollte ich dich bitten. 8 heirathen. 9 versichern. 10 eifersüchtig. 11 auf. 12 mein Herz. 13 laß dich das nicht hindern, ruhig zu sterben. 14 daß, wenn ich ihn auch heirathen wollte, es nicht geschehen könnte, indem ich schon mit einem Andern versprochen bin.

## EXERCISES IN READING.

**Malieb.**

Seht den Himmel wie heiter !  
 Laub und Blumen und Kräuter  
 Schmücken Felder und Hain ;  
 Balsam athmen die Wäste,  
 Und im schattigen Neste  
 Gurren brütende Vögelein.

Ueber grünliche Kiesel  
 Rollt der Quelle Geriesel,  
 Purpur blinkender Schaum ;  
 Und die Nachtigall flötet,  
 Und vom Abend geröthet  
 Wiegt sich spiegelnd der Blüthenbaum.

Alles tanzet vor Freude,  
 Dort das Reh auf der Heide,  
 Hier das Lämmchen im Thal,  
 Vögel dort im Gebüsch,  
 Dort im Teiche die Fische,  
 Tausend Mücken im Sonnenstrahl.

**An die Natur.**

Süße heilige Natur,  
 Laß mich gehn auf deiner Spur ;  
 Leite mich an deiner Hand,  
 Wie ein Kind am Gängelband.

Wenn ich dann ermüdet bin,  
 Sink' ich dir am Busen hin,  
 Athme sanfte Himmelsluft,  
 Hangend an der Mutter Brust.

Ach, mir ist so wohl bei dir !  
 Will dich lieben für und für.  
 Laß mich gehn auf deiner Spur,  
 Süße heilige Natur.

### Griechenland.

Die Freiheit und die Sonne gehen niemals unter auf der Erde, sondern nur ewig auf. Hört ihr, daß die Sonne sterbend erbleichet und im Ozean entschläft, oder die Freiheit: so blickt nach Amerika, da glänzt morgenfrisch die Sonne, und neben ihr die Freiheit.

---

### Tyrannei.

Ein Tyrann fällt den Geist früher als den Körper an; ich meine, er sucht seine Sklaven vorher dumm zu machen, eh' er sie elend macht, weil er weiß, daß Leute, die einen Kopf haben, ihre Hände damit regieren, und sie gegen den Tyrannen aufheben. Der Henker ahmt ihn nach, und verbindet dem Missethäter die Augen, bevor er ihn foltert.

---

### Die schönste Christin.

Denkt euch eine weibliche Seele, welche viel leidet, aber stets zu Gott aufschauet, welche, sie mag innen weinen und bluten wie sie will, immer wie eine Freude vor Menschen aussieht, und welche die Stürme der Welt weder verrücken noch verfinstern: wo steht ihr Ebenbild? — Am Himmel: da steht der Regenbogen; ihn bewegen die Wolken und die Winde nicht, die auf ihn fliegen, sondern er schimmert fort vor seiner Sonne, und seine Tropfen werden Farben, und er liegt am Himmel als glänzender Morgenthau eines schönen Tages.

---

### Die nächste Sonne.

Hinter den Sonnen ruhen Sonnen im letzten Blau, ihr fremder Strahl fliegt seit Jahrtausenden auf dem Wege zur kleinen Erde, aber er kommt nicht an. O du sanfter, naher Gott, kaum thut ja der Menscheng Geist sein kleines, junges Aug' auf, so strahlst du schon hinein, o Sonne der Sonnen und Geister!

## FAMILIAR DIALOGUES.

**Erstes Gespräch.**

Guten Morgen, mein Herr.  
 Guten Tag, Fräulein.  
 Guten Abend, Madame.  
 Gute Nacht, meine Damen.  
 Meine Herrn, ich wünsche Ihnen einen guten Morgen.  
 Wie befinden Sie sich?  
 Sehr wohl, ich danke Ihnen.  
 Es freuet mich, Sie bei guter Gesundheit zu sehen.  
 Wie befindet sich Ihr Herr Vater und Ihre Frau Mutter?  
 Sie sind ziemlich wohl.  
 Und wie geht es Ihrem Herrn Bruder?  
 Mein Bruder befindet sich nicht wohl.  
 Er hat Zahnschmerzen und Kopfschmerzen.  
 Das thut mir leid.  
 Sind Sie krank?  
 Sie sehen nicht wohl aus.  
 Ich habe mich sehr verkältet.  
 Diesen Morgen fühle ich etwas besser.  
 Empfehlen Sie mich gefälligst Ihrer Familie.

**First Dialogue.**

Good morning, Sir.  
 Good day, Miss.  
 Good evening, Madam.  
 Good night, ladies.  
 Gentlemen, I wish you good morning.  
 How do you do?  
 Very well, I thank you.  
 I am very glad to see you in good health.  
 How are your father and mother?  
 They are tolerably well.  
 And how does your brother do?  
 My brother is not well.  
 He has the tooth-ache and the head-ache.  
 I am sorry for it.  
 Are you sick?  
 You do not look well.  
 I have caught a bad cold.  
 This morning I feel a little better.  
 Please remember me to your family.

**Zweites Gespräch.**

Wie viel Uhr ist es?  
 Sagen Sie mir gefälligst, wie viel Uhr es ist.  
 Es ist zwölf Uhr.  
 Es ist ein Uhr.  
 Es ist halb zwei.  
 Nach meiner Uhr ist es halb drei.

**Second Dialogue.**

What o'clock is it?  
 Tell me, if you please, what o'clock it is.  
 It is twelve o'clock.  
 It is one o'clock.  
 It is half past one.  
 It is half past two by my watch.

Es ist ein Viertel nach drei.	}	It is a quarter past three.
Es ist ein Viertel auf vier.		Your watch goes too slow.
Ihre Uhr geht zu langsam.	}	It wants a quarter of four.
Es ist drei Viertel auf vier.		It is near five o'clock.
Es ist ein Viertel vor vier.		
Es ist beinahe fünf Uhr.		
Es ist fünfzehn Minuten vor sechs.	}	It wants fifteen minutes of six.
Es fehlt fünfzehn Minuten zu sechs.		
Es ist fünf und vierzig Minuten auf sechs.		
Nach der Sonnenuhr ist es zehn Minuten über sechs.		By the sundial it is ten minutes after six.
Hat es schon neun Uhr geschlagen?		Has it already struck nine?
Es hat noch nicht geschlagen.		It has not yet struck.
Es muß auf den Schlag neun sein.		It must be about striking nine.
Es ist Zeit nach Hause zu gehen.		It is time to go home.

**Drittes Gespräch.***Third Dialogue.*

Sprechen Sie Deutsch, mein Herr?	Do you speak German, Sir!
Ich spreche es ein wenig.	I speak it a little.
Ich verstehe es besser als ich es sprechen kann.	I understand it better than I can speak it.
Lassen Sie uns Deutsch sprechen.	Let us speak German.
Das ist ein gutes Mittel, es zu lernen.	That is a good way to learn it.
Wie nennen Sie das auf Deutsch?	How do you call that in German?
Sie sprechen sehr gut aus.	You pronounce very well.
Wie lange haben Sie schon Deutsch gelernt?	How long have you been learning German?
Es ist etwa ein Jahr.	It is about a year.
Sie haben große Fortschritte gemacht.	You have made great progress.
Ich wollte Ihnen rathen, mit dem Studium dieser Sprache fortzufahren.	I would advise you to continue the study of this language.

Deutsch wird in vielen Gegenden dieses Landes gesprochen. Englisch und Deutsch sind die zwei nützlichsten Sprachen, die man in diesem Lande lernen kann.  
Die Deutsche Sprache wird in Europa von mehr als dreißig Millionen Menschen gesprochen.

German is spoken in many parts of this country. English and German are the two most useful languages that one can learn in this country.  
The German language is spoken in Europe by more than thirty millions of people.

### Viertes Gespräch.

Wo kommen Sie her?  
Ich komme von der Stadt.  
Was giebt's Neues?  
Ich habe nichts Neues gehört.  
Wo wohnt Ihr Herr Bruder jetzt?  
Er wohnt in Berlin.  
Wo gehen Sie hin?  
Ich will nach .... gehen.  
Ist dies der Weg nach ....?  
Sie sind auf rechtem Wege.  
Wie weit ist es von hier nach ....?  
Es ist eine gute Meile.  
Ist der Weg gut?  
In dieser Jahreszeit ist er ziemlich gut.  
Kennen Sie den Herrn N.?  
Ich kenne ihn recht gut.  
In welcher Straße wohnt er?  
Er wohnt in der vierten Straße.  
Ich will Ihnen seine Adresse geben.  
Wollen Sie gefälligst zum Abendessen bei uns bleiben?  
Ich habe keine Zeit, ich muß gehen.  
Leben Sie wohl.  
Bis ich die Ehre habe Sie wieder zu sehen.

### Fourth Dialogue.

Where do you come from?  
I come from the city.  
What is the news?  
I have not heard any news.  
Where does your brother live now?  
He lives in Berlin.  
Where are you going?  
I want to go to .....  
Is this the way to .....?  
You are in the right way.  
How far is it from here to .....?  
It is a full mile.  
Is the road good?  
It is pretty good at this season.  
Do you know Mr. N.?  
I know him very well.  
In what street does he live?  
He lives in Fourth street.  
I will give you his address.  
Will you stay and sup with us?  
I have no time, I must go.  
Farewell.  
Until I have the honour of seeing you again.

## RECOMMENDATIONS.

---

*From the Rev. John McCaffrey, President of Mt. St. Mary's College, Emmitsburg, Md.*

*Mt. St. Mary's College, June 6th, 1840.*

Professor Beleké has taught the German language in Mt. St. Mary's College, for the last five years, with unusual ability and success. The system of Grammar, which he is now about to publish, has thus been practically tested, and has proved its superiority to every other. I have examined it in manuscript, have compared it with the grammars most esteemed, and witnessed its practical advantages, and I am convinced, that by means of it the study of the German language is divested of many difficulties, which formerly tried the learner's patience; that in every part of this Grammar the most important improvements have been introduced; that it will greatly facilitate the labour both of the student and of the teacher; in a word, that it is the most systematic and easy introduction to the knowledge of German that has ever been offered to the public.

JOHN M'CAFFREY.

---

*From the Rev. H. I. Smith, D.D., Professor of the German and French Languages and Literature in Pennsylvania College.*

*Gettysburg, August 8th, 1840.*

Dear Sir,—It has afforded me great satisfaction to examine the manuscript of the new German Grammar, which you are about to publish, and respecting which you desire an expression of opinion from me. To say that it is decidedly superior to all the other English-German grammars, which have been introduced in the schools of this country, would but inadequately express the opinion which I entertain of your work. Although, in some parts, I should prefer a somewhat different arrangement, in others, a different phraseology, I can, with-

35X522

out any hesitation say, that I regard it as precisely the kind of grammar which is wanted. The imperfections and defects of other grammars, hitherto in use, are so great, so numerous, and so discouraging, that I have long been under the necessity of adopting with my classes, a course entirely independent of, and different from, that which those grammars mark out for us. And accordingly I perused, with so much the greater satisfaction, the manuscript which you were pleased to submit to my examination, for I found in it all those imperfections remedied, those defects supplied, and those discouragements removed. I need say no more in commendation of your Grammar, except to add, that I hope you will hasten, as much as possible, its publication, so that my classes may soon enjoy the facilities, which it so amply furnishes, of making rapid progress in the noble language which it teaches. When compared with other grammars, with which I am acquainted, it may truly be characterized as a work, in which German is made easy.

I am, very respectfully, yours,

H. I. SMITH.

PROF. C. J. BELEKE.

---

*From J. Freitag, LL.D., of the University of Goettingen,  
at present Professor of the Modern Languages in Baltimore.*

*Baltimore, 14th August, 1840.*

Dear Sir,—I am persuaded, from a careful and critical examination of your manuscript, that your Grammar is, in every respect, superior to any other now in use, and will really serve to render the study of the German language not only an easy, but also an interesting task. I will introduce it into my private classes, and the different institutions in which I instruct, and feel confident that as soon as its merits are known it will be universally adopted.

Yours, respectfully,

PROF. BELEKE.

J. FREITAG.

---

*From the Rev. Otho H. Borgess, Pastor of Holy Trinity  
(German).*

*Philadelphia, Nov. 2d, 1840.*

Dear Sir,—It was with very great satisfaction that I examined your English-German Grammar. The work

evinces acuteness of mind, and a profound knowledge of the subject. Its principles are clear, and its method new and philosophical. Convinced of its superiority to all other grammars now in use, I do not doubt its general adoption as soon as its merits are known.

Very respectfully,

Yours,

PROF. BELEKE.

O. H. BORGESS.

*From Peter S. Du Ponceau, L.L.D., President of the American Philosophical Society.*

*Philadelphia, 4th Nov. 1840.*

Dear Sir,—I have read, with great pleasure, your “Grammar of the German Language,” and have derived much instruction from it. It is the best Grammar of the German tongue, for the use of foreigners, that has fallen under my notice; and, indeed, I have not met, even in the purely German grammarians, with those clear, simple, and easy rules, with which you so much facilitate the acquisition of that beautiful language, without the knowledge of which no man can, in the present age, be called *learned*. The rapid sale of many hundred copies, before the work has left the press, is a pledge of its future success; and I hope that it will be appreciated in your native country as it is in this. It will give me great pleasure to hear of this result, which I venture to anticipate.

I am, with great regard and esteem,

Your obedient servant,

PETER S. DU PONCEAU.

PROF. BELEKE.

*From A. D. Bache, President of Girard College.*

*Philadelphia, Nov. 5, 1840.*

Dear Sir,—My very superficial acquaintance with the German language might seem to render any expression of opinion in relation to your Grammar improper, were it not that the difficulties of making even this acquisition are fresh in my recollection. These difficulties you have met, and, I believe, successfully mastered, by the aid of a laborious analysis. Your work will prove, in my opinion, of inestimable value to the American student, by giving him a more easy access than he can now obtain, to the great store-house of German literature and science. The

simple and chaste language in which you have written, especially in expressing the rules, has struck me forcibly in your work.

Allow me to wish for your Grammar all the success with the public which it deserves, which, with the opinion I entertain of its merits, is equivalent to wishing its general adoption.

Very respectfully and truly,

Yours,

PROF. BELEKE.

A. D. BACHE.

*From Dr. Robley Dunglison, Professor of the Institutes of Medicine and Materia Medica in the Jefferson Medical College of Philadelphia.*

*Philadelphia, Nov. 6th, 1840.*

Dear Sir,—I have examined, so far as the short time since I received it would permit, your Grammar of the German language, which appears to me to possess many excellencies above its predecessors. The simplicity introduced by you into the arrangement of the declensions, the verbs, and the grammatical principles peculiar to the German, cannot fail to facilitate greatly the labours of the student in the delightful language of your country.

Even thus far I have acquired much information from it, and I look forward, with great pleasure, to the draughts which I have yet to obtain from the same fount.

Accept my acknowledgments for the copy of your Grammar which you were so good as to present to me, and believe me, dear sir,

Respectfully,

Your obedient servant,

PROF. BELEKE.

ROBLEY DUNGLISON.

*From J. C. Oehlschlager, Professor of the Modern Languages.*

*Philadelphia, November 7th, 1840.*

Dear Sir,—I acknowledge with pleasure, the receipt of your German Grammar, and do not hesitate to express it as my candid opinion, that both the teacher and student of our common language, owe you a lasting debt of gratitude.

During ten years that I have followed the vocation of a

teacher, I have not met with a book, which appears to me, as likely to smooth the rugged path of study, as your Grammar.

Knowing from experience, the many difficulties which the German language presents in its declensions, I firmly believe, that you have succeeded better in removing these difficulties, than any of your predecessors.

The manner in which the Syntax is treated, deserves every credit.

Altogether the work displays much industry and research, and I shall immediately recommend it to my pupils, as the most proper to facilitate their progress.

Wishing your work all the success which it deserves, I am, dear sir,

Your obedient, humble servant,  
J. C. OEHLISCHLAGER.

PROF. BELEKE.

---

*From Charles Minnigerode, Professor of Ancient and Modern Languages.*

*Philadelphia, November 7th, 1840.*

Dear Sir,—I have just finished the perusal of your "Grammar of the German Language." The high satisfaction, which I derived from this work, when sometime ago you were kind enough to lay before me the manuscript, has been much increased now, as I see it as a whole in my hands. The most difficult parts in our language for the beginner, are the declensions, and they are arranged in your Grammar, in the most judicious and satisfactory manner, so as to do away almost entirely with the said difficulty. The chapters on the adjectives and the verbs, are a peculiar ornament of your book; but I might call the Syntax the most pleasing part of it, as it does not only facilitate the study, but displays the logical harmony and the philosophical nature of our language, in a manner, heretofore, not yet realized.

I dare say you have presented, by your Grammar, not only the student, with a more complete and perspicuous survey of the German language, than he has hitherto met with, but also the teacher with an excellent guide: and pupil and teacher, yes, every German, not only in America but even in Germany, will feel obliged to you for having facilitated so much, the study of this rich and useful language.

I shall take pleasure to speak in another place, more at

large of the great scientific value of this Grammar, and sign,

Most respectfully, Sir,

Your obedient servant.

CHS. MINNIGERODE.

CASPAR J. BELEKE, Esq.

---

*From the Rev. Dr. Demme, Pastor of the Evangelical Lutheran Churches of St. Michael and Zion.*

*Philadelphia, Nov. 9th, 1840.*

Dear Sir,—Before I had an opportunity of seeing your Grammar of the German Language, I had read a very strong recommendation of it by my friend, the Rev. Prof. Smith, of Gettysburg. Knowing his competency to judge, my expectations were raised accordingly. I can now say, after a cursory perusal of your work, that they have not been disappointed. Without the least intention or wish to detract from the merits of German grammarians of an earlier date, it seems to me that you have a just claim to the thanks of every student of our language. The difficulties, so often complained of, as connected with the declension of the noun and adjective, the conjugation of the verb, and the formation of sentences, are greatly lessened by your simple and comprehensive rules. You have shown that there is system in the Etymology and Syntax of our language, and that this system may be easily understood. Entertaining this opinion, I regard any recommendation of mine as unnecessary. Your Grammar will recommend itself. But I wish to express my pleasure in the appearance of a work that bears the stamp of original thought, and promises to be useful.

Very respectfully, yours,

PROF. BELEKE.

CHS. R. DEMME.

---

*From Philip F. Mayer, Pastor of the Evangelical Lutheran Church of St. John.*

*Nov. 9, 1840.*

With the opinion of the Rev. Dr. Demme, expressed in his note to Professor Beleke, concerning the merits and claims of that gentleman's Grammar of the German Language, my own entirely coincides.

PHILIP F. MAYER.



111



1111









OCT 4 - 1935

